Owner's Manual

2017 A6

Audi
Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi - we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

4G0012721BB

About this Owner's Manual 5

Cockpit 6
Cockpit overview 6
Controls at a glance 6

Instruments and indicator lights 9
Instruments 9
Indicator lights 10

Driver information system 21
Overview 21
Operation 22
On-board computer 22
Efficiency program 23
Odometer 24
Time/date display 24
Head-up display 24
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) 25

Starting and driving 27
Opening and closing 27
Central locking 27
Luggage compartment lid 33
Child safety lock 36
Power windows 37
Sunroof 38
Valet Parking function 39
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 39

Lights and Vision 41
Exterior lighting 41
Interior lighting 44
Vision 45
Windshield wipers 47

Seats and storage 50
General information 50
Front seats 50
Head restraints 51
Memory function 52
Ashtray 54
Cigarette lighter 54
12 Volt sockets 55
Storage 55
Luggage compartment 57

Warm and cold 60
Climate control system 60
Steering wheel heating 65

Driving 66
General information 66
Steering 68
Starting and stopping the engine 70
Start-Stop system 72
Electromechanical parking brake 75
Starting from a stop 76
Automatic transmission 77

Trailer towing 83
Driving with a trailer 83
Trailer towing information 85

Driver assistance 86
Assist 86
Speed warning system 86
Cruise control system 86
Audi adaptive cruise control 88
Audi active lane assist 96
Audi side assist 98
Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection 101
Audi drive select (drive settings) 104

Parking systems 108
General information 108
Parking system plus 109
Rearview camera 110
Peripheral cameras 113
Adjusting the display and the warning tones 118
Error messages 118
Trailer hitch 118

Intelligent Technology 120
Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 120
Braking 122
Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering 123
All wheel drive (quattro) 124
Energy management 124
Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules 126

Safety 128
Driving safety 128
Basics 128
Correct passenger seating positions 129
Driver's and front passenger's footwell . . 133
Pedal area 133
Storing cargo correctly 134
Reporting Safety Defects 135

Audi pre sense 137
Preventative passenger protection 137

Safety belts 139
General information 139
Why use safety belts? 140
Safety belts 142
Belt tensioners 145

Airbag system 147
Important information 147
Front airbags 151
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 159
Knee airbags 163
Side airbags 165
Side curtain airbags 168

Child safety 171
Important information 171
Child seats 177
Securing child seats 182
LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children) 185
Additional information 189

Maintenance and Care 190
Checking and Filling 190
Gasoline 190
Diesel fuel 191
Refueling 192
Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF) 194
Catalytic converter 197
Diesel particulate filter 198
Engine compartment 198
Engine oil 201
Cooling system 204
Brake fluid 206
Battery 206
Windshield washer system 208
Service interval display 208

Wheels 210
Wheels and Tires 210
Tire pressure monitoring system 228

Care and cleaning 231
General information 231
Car washes 231
Cleaning and care information 232
Placing your vehicle out of service 235

Do It Yourself 236
Emergency assistance 236
General information 236
Equipment 236
Replacing wheels 237
Spare tire 242

Fuses 244
Replacing fuses 244
Driver side cockpit fuse assignment 245
Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment 246
Luggage compartment fuse assignment . 246

Bulbs 248
Replacing light bulbs 248

Emergency situations 249
General 249
Starting by pushing or towing 249
Starting with jumper cables 249
Use of jumper cables 250
Towing with a tow truck 251
Raising the vehicle 253

Accessories and Technical Data . 255
Technical data 255
Vehicle specifications 255
Notes about technical data 255
Weights 256
Dimensions 256
Capacities 257

4G0012721BB

Gasoline engines 257
Diesel engines 258

Consumer information 259
Warranty coverages 259
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 259
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 259
Maintenance 259
Accessories and technical changes 261
Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication and Electronic Systems 262

Index 263

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It manual contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings for using your vehicle.

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example "Applies to: vehicles with Head-up display". Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk "*".

The **illustrations** are designed as a general guide and on your vehicle may look slightly different than what is illustrated.

All **directions**, such as "left", "right", "front" and "rear", are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a "WARNING" within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

4G0012721BB

Cockpit overview

Controls at a glance

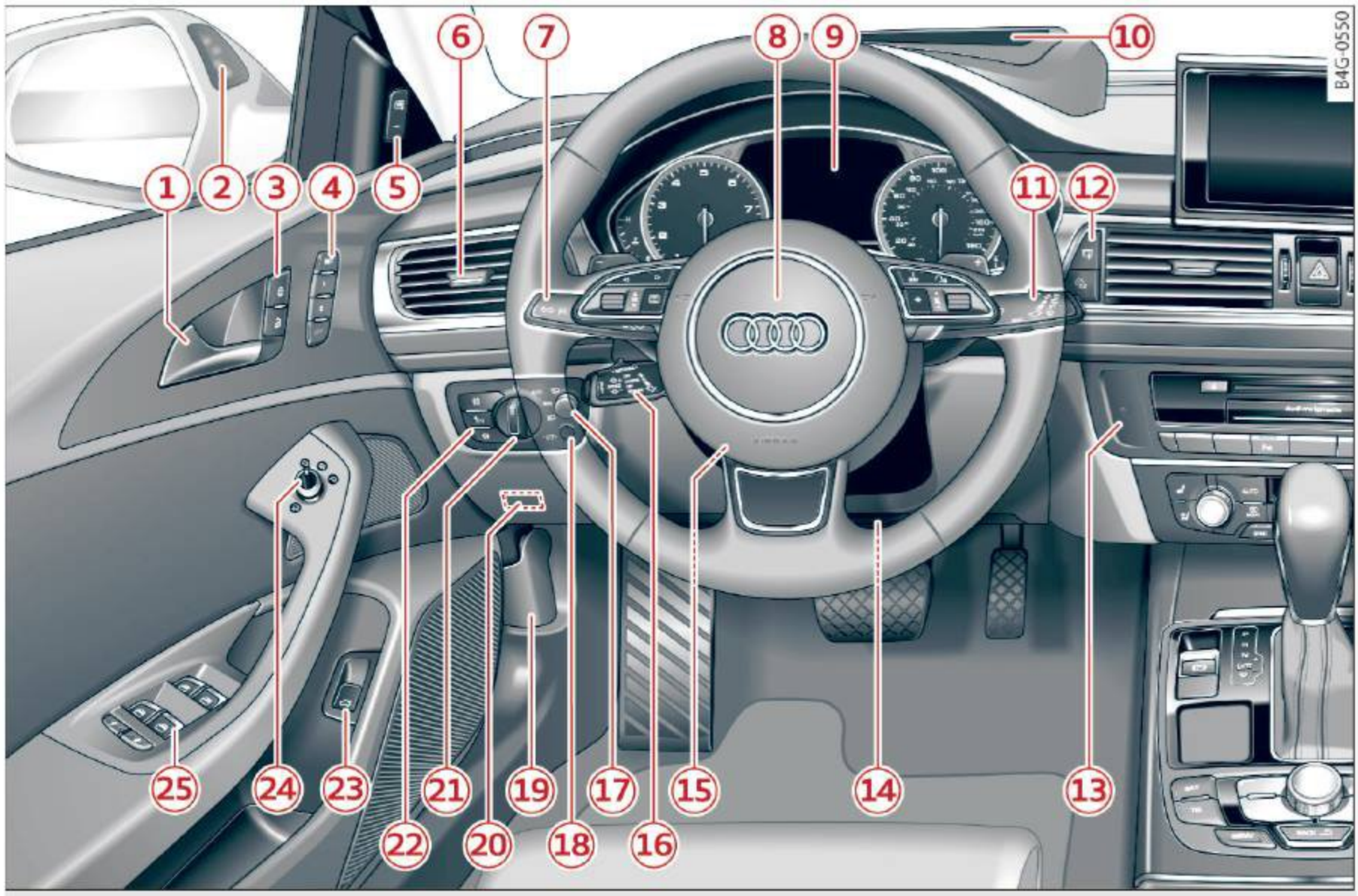

Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

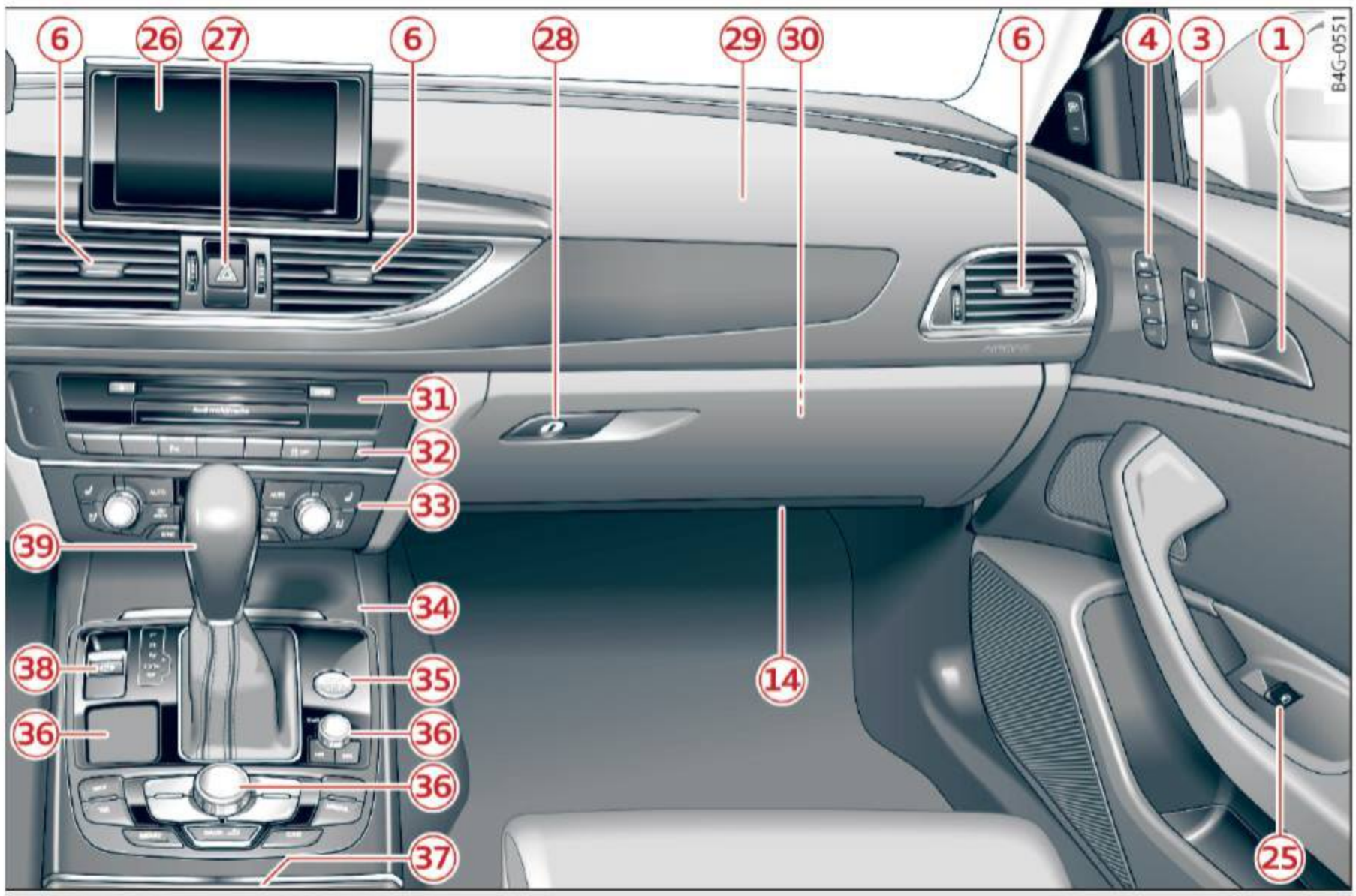

Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

1. Door handle
2. Side assist display 98
3. Central locking switch 31
4. Memory function buttons 52
5. Side assist button 98
6. Air vents with thumbwheel
7. Lever for:
   - Turn signals and high beams . . . 42
   - High beam assistant 42
   - Active lane assist 96
8. Multifunction steering wheel with:
   - Horn
   - Driver's airbag 151
   - Driver information system controls 21
   - Audio/video, telephone, navigation and voice recognition controls
   - Steering wheel heating 65
   - Shift paddles 80
9. Instrument cluster 9
10. Head-up display 24
11. Windshield washer system lever . 47
12. Buttons for:
    - Infotainment system display
    - Trip odometer 24
13. starting the engine when there is a malfunction 72
14. Knee airbag 163
15. Steering wheel adjustment, depending on equipment
    - Mechanical 68
    - Power 69
16. Lever for:
    - Cruise control system 86
    - Adaptive cruise control 88
17. Button for switching the Head-up display on/off, adjusting the height 24
18. Instrument illumination 44
19. Hood release 198
20. Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II) 25
21. Light switch 41
22. Buttons for:
    - All-weather lights 41
    - Night vision assistant 101
    - Rear fog light(s) 41
23. Switch for luggage compartment lid 33
24. Power exterior mirror adjustment 45
25. Buttons for:
    - Power windows 37
    - Parental control 36
26. Infotainment system display
27. Emergency flashers 43
28. Glove compartment 56
29. Front passenger's airbag 151
30. Valet Parking function 39
31. Drives (Infotainment system)
32. Buttons/indicator light for:
    - Start/Stop system 72
    - Parking aid 108
    - PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 159
    - Power sunshade 47
    - Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 121
33. Climate control system, depending on vehicle equipment:
    - Deluxe automatic climate control . . 61
    - 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control 62
34. Storage compartment or ashtray with cigarette lighter 54, 54
35. START ENGINE STOP button . . . 70
36. Infotainment unit
37. Cup holder , 12 Volt outlet 55, 55
38. Electromechanical parking brake . 75
39. Selector lever (automatic transmission) 77

Tips

- Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.
- The instrument cluster display is either multicolored or monochrome, depending on vehicle equipment. Because the images in ▶

4G0012721BB

both are nearly identical, the multicolored display is shown in this Owner's Manual.

– Operation of the Multi Media Interface (Infotainment system) is described in a separate operating instructions manual.

Instruments and indicator lights

Instruments

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.

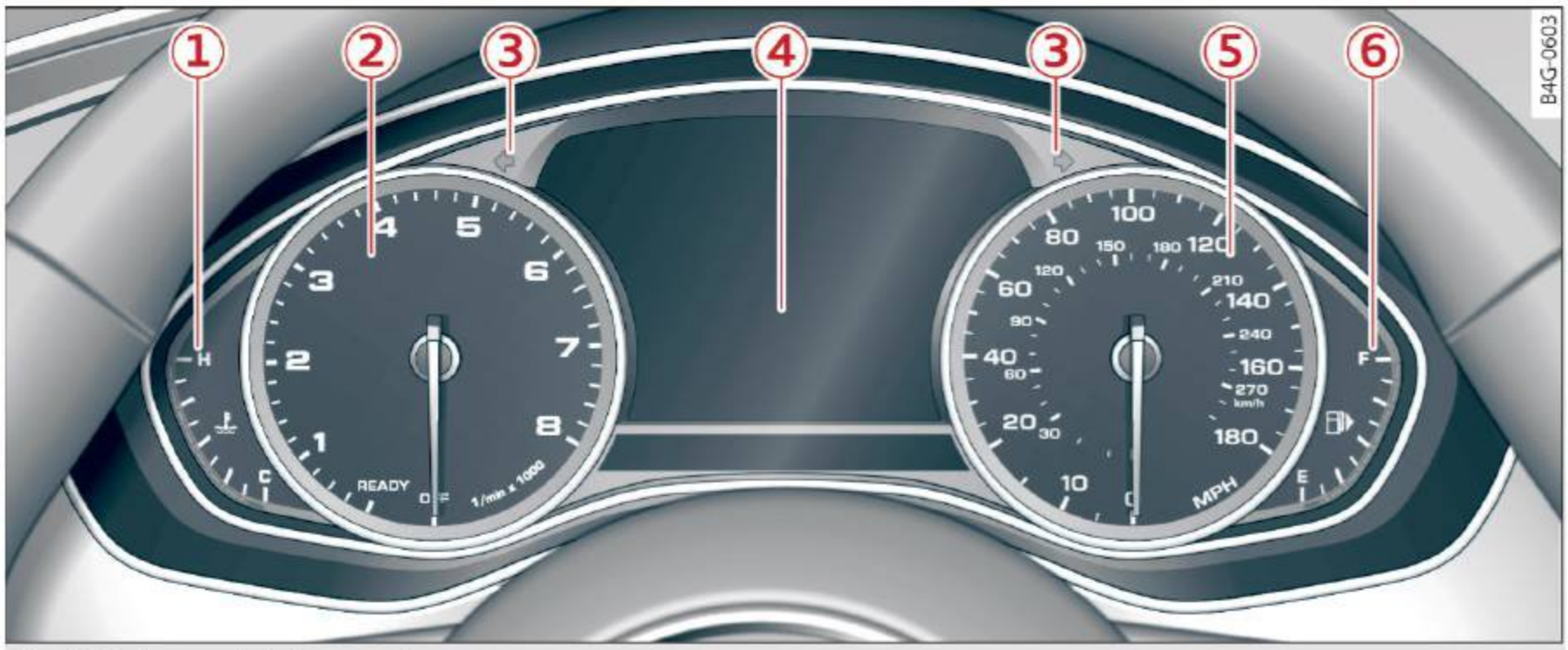

Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview

① Engine coolant temperature gauge . . 9
② Tachometer 10
– With **OFF** status indicator 70
– With **READY** status indicator . . 70, 72
③ Turn signals 42
④ Display with
– Driver information system 21
– Indicator lights 10
⑤ Speedometer
⑥ Fuel level 10

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 9, fig. 3* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To prevent engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 14*.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the cooling-air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.

– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines

Due to the high efficiency of these engines, the engine may not always reach operating temperature in cold outside temperatures. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM).

You should shift to the next lowest gear when the speed is below 1,500 RPM. The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warmed up to operating temperature. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the D or S selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Note

The needle in the tachometer ② ⇨ *page 9, fig. 3* may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short time or there is a risk of engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

Upshifting early helps you to save fuel and reduce operating noise.

Tips

Applies to: S models

The engine speed is limited when the engine is cold - the full engine output is not available. When the engine is at operating temperature, the red area in the tachometer moves to a higher RPM range.

Fuel level

The display ⑥ only works when the ignition is switched on. If the fuel level drops below 2.6 gal (10 L), a red LED will turn on and the indicator light will turn on ⇨ *page 18*. The LED blinks red when the fuel level is very low.

The possible range based on the current fuel level is shown in tab Ⓐ ⇨ *page 21, fig. 4*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 257*.

Note

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will then enter the exhaust system. This can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Indicator lights

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

Messages may appear with some indicator lights. A warning signal will sound at the same time. The indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display can be covered by other displays. To show them again, select the tab for indicator lights and messages using the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 21*. If there are several malfunctions, you can display them one at a time using the thumbwheel.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

Central indicator light

Applies to: vehicles with monochrome display

If a message appears together with a central indicator light ⚠ or ⚠, the central indicator light will indicate the priority of the warning. If a white indicator light also appears, the central indicator light will have its own color. For example, ▶

if appears together with , read the description for .

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

Red indicator lights

BRAKE	**USA models:** brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
	Canada models: brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 13*
PARK	**USA models:** electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
	Canada models: electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
	Alternator ⇨ *page 14*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 15*
	Front safety belt ⇨ *page 14*
	Electromechanical steering ✓ ⇨ *page 123*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 15*
MPH	**USA models:** speed warning system ⇨ *page 86*
Km/h	**Canada models:** speed warning system ⇨ *page 86*
	Adaptive cruise control* ✓ ⇨ *page 90*
	Air suspension ⇨ *page 16*
	Night vision assistant* ⇨ *page 102*
	Night vision assistant* ⇨ *page 102*
AdBlue	AdBlue* ⇨ *page 194*
AdBlue	AdBlue* ⇨ *page 194*
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 10*

Yellow indicator lights

	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
ABS	**USA models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
ABS	**Canada models:** anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 16*
AIR BAG	**USA models:** safety systems ⇨ *page 17*
	Canada models: safety systems ⇨ *page 17*
	Brake pads ⇨ *page 17*

4G0012721BB

	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 14*
	Tire pressure monitoring system ✓ ⇨ *page 228*
TPMS	Tire pressure monitoring system ⇨ *page 228*
EPC	Engine control (gasoline engine) ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Engine control (diesel engine) ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 17*
	Diesel particulate filter* ⇨ *page 18*
	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 18*
MIN	Engine oil level ⇨ *page 15*
SENSOR	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 18*
	Engine warm-up request ⇨ *page 18*
	Battery charge ⇨ *page 14*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 18*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 19*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 19*
?	Remote control key ⇨ *page 70*
	Remote control key ⇨ *page 72*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 29*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 19*
	Rear fog lights ⇨ *page 19*

	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 19*
	Adaptive light* ⇨ *page 42*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 19*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 97*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 81*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 81*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 15*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 15*
	Brake booster ⇨ *page 16,* Central indicator light ⇨ *page 10*
	Electromechanical power steering, dynamic steering* ⇨ *page 123*
	Air suspension* ⇨ *page 16*
	Sport differential* ⇨ *page 19*
AdBlue	AdBlue* ⇨ *page 194*
AdBlue	AdBlue* ⇨ *page 194*

Other indicator lights

⇦ ⇨	Turn signals ⇨ *page 20*
CRUISE	**USA models:** cruise control system ⇨ *page 86*

	Canada models: cruise control system ⇨ *page 86*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 90*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 90*
	Adaptive cruise control* ⇨ *page 90*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 97*
	Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 72*
	Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 72*
	High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 42*
	High beams ⇨ *page 42*

BRAKE / Brake system

If this indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the brake system.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Stop vehicle and check brake fluid level.

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) Brakes: malfunction! Please stop vehicle safely

If the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models), the ESC indicator light , and the brake system indicator light BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) all turn on and this message appears, then the ABS, ESC and braking distribution are malfunctioning ⇨ ⚠.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE (USA models)/ (Canada models) Parking brake: System fault! See owner's manual

– If the indicator light and the message appear **when the vehicle is stationary or after switching the ignition on**, check if you can release the parking brake. If you cannot release the parking brake, see your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If you can release the parking brake and the message still appears, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light and message appear **while driving**, the hill start assist or emergency braking function may be malfunctioning. It may not be possible to set the parking brake or release it once it has been set. Do not park your vehicle on hills. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Applies to: USA models

If the BRAKE and turn on at the same time, the brake pads are worn out ⇨ *page 17*.

⚠ WARNING

– Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 198, Working in the engine compartment* before opening the hood and checking the brake fluid level.
– If the brake system indicator light does not turn off or it turns on while driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low, and this increases the risk of an accident. Stop the vehicle and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– If the brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS/ESC regulating function may be malfunctioning. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

4G0012721BB

PARK/Ⓟ Electromechanical parking brake

If the PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light turns on, the parking brake was set.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Caution: Vehicle parked too steep

If the indicator light blinks and the message appears, there is not enough braking power to secure the vehicle. The brakes have overheated. The vehicle could roll away even on a small incline.

PARK (USA models) / Ⓟ (Canada models) Press brake pedal to release parking brake

To release the parking brake, press the brake pedal and press the button at the same time or start driving with hill start assist ⇨ *page 76*.

Parking brake!

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on the parking brake, see ⇨ *page 75*.

Cooling system

Switch off engine and check coolant level!

The coolant level is too low.

Do not continue driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 205*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 205*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature too high! Please let engine run with vehicle stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. Wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping.
– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 198, Working in the engine compartment*.

Note

Do not continue driving if the indicator light turns on - this increases the risk of engine damage.

Front safety belt

The indicator light stays on until the driver's and front passenger's safety belts are fastened. Above a certain speed, there will also be a warning tone.

Tips

For additional information on safety belts, see ⇨ *page 139*.

Alternator/vehicle battery

Electrical system: malfunction! Battery is not being charged

There is a malfunction in the alternator or the vehicle electrical system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately. Because the vehicle battery is discharging, turn off all unnecessary electrical equipment such as the radio. See your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if the battery charge level is too low.

Low battery charge: Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired. ▶

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery charged enough while driving.

If the message does not turn off, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility repair the malfunction.

Engine stop while driving

Engine stopped: No power steering and brake support.

There is a malfunction in the engine or in the fuel supply system.

More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine and check oil level

Stop the engine and do not continue driving. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 203*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 203*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Engine oil level

Please add oil immediately.

Add oil immediately ⇨ *page 201*.

Add oil max. x qt (l). You may continue driving

Add the displayed amount of oil immediately ⇨ *page 201*.

Steering lock

Do not drive vehicle: Steering defective

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on.

Do **not** tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering lock: System fault Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle when there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock - this increases the risk of an accident.

Engine start system

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

Do **not** switch the ignition off because you may not be able to switch it on again.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine start system fault. Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system. ▶

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension

Air suspension: System fault Driving slowly at maximum 35 mph is possible.

There is a malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately at a maximum speed of 35 mph (60 km/h) to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Service mode. Vehicle can only be moved with restrictions

Carefully drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the service mode deactivated.

Air suspension: System fault

There is a system malfunction that can result in restricted driving stability or reduced ground clearance.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Air suspension: Vehicle is too low. Ground clearance limited

The ground clearance is very low due to a system malfunction. Wait until the air suspension system has restored normal ground clearance. Otherwise, conditions such as an uneven road surface can lead to vehicle damage.

Clutch

Applies to: vehicles with manual transmission

Clutch: malfunction! Safely park vehicle

There is an ongoing malfunction in the clutch. Stop the vehicle safely. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Clutch malfunction! Adapt driving style. Contact Service

There is an ongoing malfunction in the clutch. The engine torque that can be transferred is reduced. You may continue driving. Avoid using the clutch in any way that will place a heavy load on it. For example, do not let the clutch rub when starting on hills, when towing a trailer or when maneuvering the vehicle. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Clutch malfunction! You may continue driving

There is a malfunction in the clutch. The engine torque that can be transferred is reduced. You may continue driving. Avoid using the clutch in the future in any way that will place a heavy load on it. For example, do not let the clutch rub when starting on hills, when towing a trailer or when maneuvering the vehicle. The indicator light turns off once the clutch is fully operable again.

Brake booster

Brake servo: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the brake booster. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. Braking behavior may be different from how it normally functions and the brake pedal may vibrate.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC or ASR (Anti-Slip Regulation) is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is functioning fully.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was switched off using the OFF button ⇨ *page 120*.

Stabilization control (ESC/ABS) malfunction! See owner's manual

If the indicator light and the ABS indicator light ABS (USA models) / (Canada models) turn on and this message appears, there is a malfunction in the ABS system or electronic differential lock. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

If the BRAKE (USA models) / (Canada models) brake system indicator light turns on together with the ABS and ESC indicator lights, the ABS and ESC regulating function may have malfunctioned. Functions that stabilize the vehicle are no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

For additional information on ESC and ABS, see ⇨ *page 120*.

AIR BAG / Safety systems

The AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light monitors the safety systems.

If the AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light turns on or blinks, there is a malfunction in a safety system such as the airbag or belt tensioner system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during a collision, which increases the risk of serious injury or death.

Brake pads

Brake pads!

The brake pads are worn.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the brake pads checked.

Applies to: USA models

The indicator light turns on together with the BRAKE indicator light

EPC Engine control (gasoline engine)

If the EPC indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine control.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

Engine control (diesel engine)

The engine is preheating if the indicator light turns on when the ignition is switched on.

If the indicator light does not turn on or blinks while driving, there is an engine control malfunction.

Immediately drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL)

The malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) is part of the On Board Diagnostic system (OBD II). The symbol turns on when the ignition is switched on and turns off again once the engine is started and running at a steady idle speed. This indicates that the MIL is functioning correctly.

The indicator light turns on if there is a malfunction in the engine electronics. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 25*.

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 192*.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine and diesel particulate filter

Particulate filter: System fault See owner's manual

The diesel particulate filter requires regeneration. To support the filter's self-cleaning function:

Drive for approximately 15 minutes at 37 mph (60 km/h) or above in the S selector lever position. Keep the engine speed around 2,000 RPM. The temperature increase that will result from this can burn off the soot in the filter. The indicator light will turn off when the cleaning has completed successfully.

If the indicator light does **not** turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Always adapt your speed to the current weather, road and traffic conditions. You should never disobey traffic laws in order to follow driving recommendations.

Tips

For additional information on the diesel particulate filter, see ⇨ *page 198*.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

Maximum engine speed: XXXX rpm

The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the EPC indicator light also turns on. Make sure that the speed does not go above the speed displayed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

Applies to: S models

The engine speed is limited when the engine is cold - the full engine output is not available. When the engine is at operating temperature, the red area in the tachometer moves to a higher RPM range.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: system fault!

The sensor to check the engine oil level has failed. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Engine warm-up request

Please warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either from low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tank system

Please refuel

If the indicator light turns on for the first time and the message appears, there are about 2.6 gallons (10 liters) of fuel left in the tank.

Fuel tank system malfunction! Please contact dealer

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. ▶

Tips

For additional information on refueling, see ⇨ *page 192*.

Washer fluid level

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off ⇨ *page 208*.

Windshield wipers

Windshield wiper: system fault!

There is a malfunction with the windshield wipers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Defective light bulb warning

If the indicator light turns on, a light has failed. The message indicates the location of the light. If the indicator light also turns on, then a rear fog light has failed. The position of the indicator light corresponds with the location on the vehicle.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Vehicle lights: Malfunction

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic headlight range control

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic headlight range control

Headlight range control: system fault!

There is a malfunction in the headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Light/rain sensor

Automatic headlights/ automatic wipers: System fault

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch. You can still control all functions that are independent of the rain sensor through the windshield wiper lever.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential

Applies to: vehicles with sport differential

Sport differential: System fault

There is a malfunction with the sport differential.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Sport differential: Overheating

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of.

WARNING

Contact your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified workshop if the sport differential is faulty or malfunctioning. The repair must be performed by trained personnel using the correct oil in order to ensure safety.

4G0012721BB

⇦ ⇨ Turn signals

If the ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light blinks, the turn signals are activated. If both indicator lights are blinking, the emergency flashers are activated.

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

Additional information about the turn signals can be found under ⇨ *page 42*.

Driver information system

Overview

Fig. 4 Driver information system in the instrument cluster

Fig. 5 Instrument cluster: example information line

The information in the driver information system is shown in Ⓑ tabs Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 4*. The following content is possible depending on vehicle equipment:

Ⓐ	Ⓑ
First tab	**Vehicle functions:**
	On-board computer ⇨ *page 22*
	Efficiency program* ⇨ *page 23*
	Digital speedometer
	Cruise control system* ⇨ *page 86*
	Adaptive cruise control* and braking guard* ⇨ *page 88*
	Active lane assist* ⇨ *page 96*
	Reduced display
Second tab	Indicator lights and messages
	Warning when a door, the hood or the rear lid is not closed
	Service interval display ⇨ *page 208*
	Speed warning system* ⇨ *page 86*
Third tab	Night vision assistant* ⇨ *page 101*
Fourth tab	Audio/Video
Fifth tab	Telephone*
Sixth tab	Navigation*

The second and third tabs are only visible if at least one indicator light or message is shown or if that system is switched on.

The status line Ⓒ is located in the bottom part of the display ⇨ *fig. 4*. It displays the exterior temperature, time, selector lever position, trip odometer and odometer.

For some vehicle functions, you can access the trip information from the temporary memory ⇨ *page 23* in line ① ⇨ *fig. 5*.

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Tips

- You can select the units used for temperature, speed and other measurements in the Infotainment system.
- If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to the heat radiating from the engine.
- For information on the audio/video and navigation* functions, refer to the separate Infotainment system owner's manual.

Operation

The driver information system is operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel.

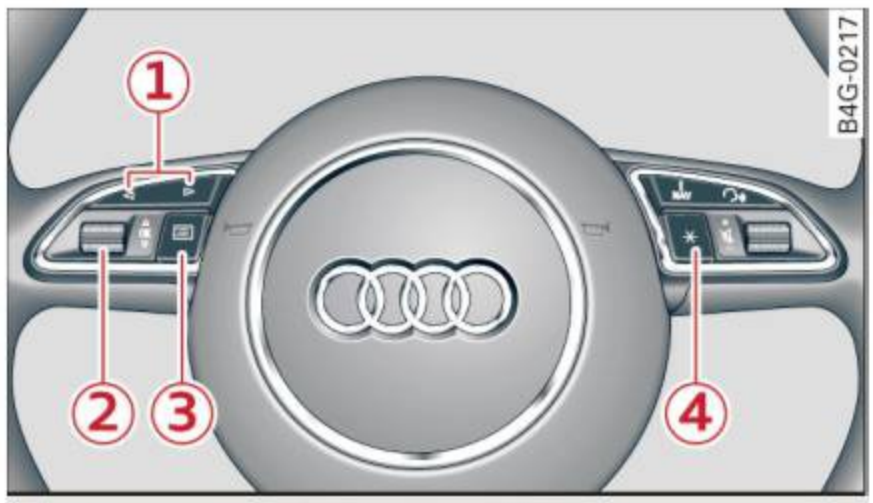

Fig. 6 Multifunction steering wheel: operating the driver information system

Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: opening the vehicle functions menu

Operating

- Switch the ignition on.
- To switch between the tabs, press the rocker switch ① to the left or right ⇨ *fig. 6*.
- To access additional information below or above, turn the thumbwheel ② down or up.
- To confirm a selection, press the thumbwheel ②.
- To open the submenu for an active tab, press the button ▤ ③.
- To select a function programmed to a steering wheel button*, press the button ④.

Opening the Vehicle functions

- Select the first tab with the rocker switch ①.
- Press the ▤ button ③. The **Vehicle functions** menu is displayed ⇨ *fig. 7*.
- To select a menu item, turn and press the thumbwheel ②.

Resetting values to zero

- In the **Vehicle functions** menu, select **On-board computer** or **Efficiency program**.
- You can now select between the long-term memory and short-term memory.
- To reset the values in a memory, press and hold the thumbwheel ② for one second.

Assigning a function to a programmable steering wheel button*

- Select the CAR function button > **(Car)*Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button programming**.

The last function selected displays when you switch the ignition on.

On-board computer

Fig. 8 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

You can call up the following information in the on-board computer:

– Date
– Driving time from the short-term memory
– Average consumption from the short-term memory
– Average speed from the short-term memory
– Distance driven from the short-term memory
– Current fuel consumption
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information. ▶

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

For some vehicle functions, you can access the driving information from the short-term memory in the line ① ⇨ *page 21, fig. 5*.

Fuel consumption

The current fuel consumption can be shown using a bar graph ⇨ *fig. 8*. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving fuel through one of the following functions:

– **Recuperation**: electrical energy can be stored in the vehicle battery when the vehicle is coasting or driving downhill. The bar will move toward .
– **Cylinder on demand system***: the engine automatically switches four cylinders off when lower power output is required and other conditions are met. This change is not noticeable to the passengers.

Tips

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 24*.

Efficiency program

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program

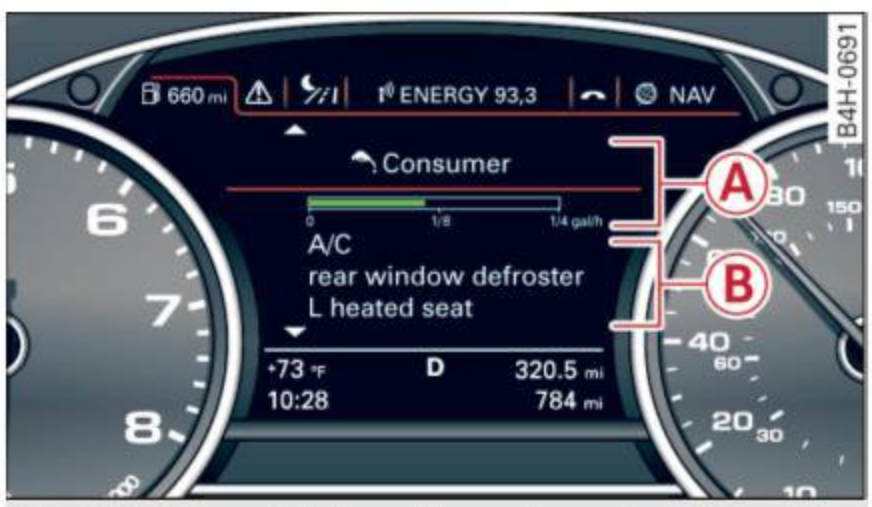

Fig. 9 Instrument cluster: other equipment

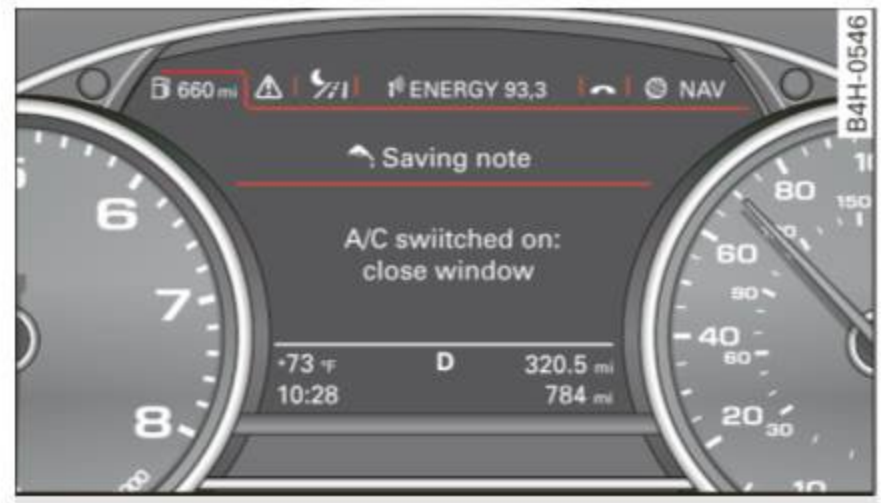

Fig. 10 Instrument cluster: economy tip

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It shows other consumers that are using fuel and economy tips give advice on how to drive efficiently. The efficiency program receives distance and consumption data from the on-board computer.

To display the efficiency program, open the **Vehicle functions** menu and select the **Efficiency program** menu item.

Other consumers

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three other equipment items Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 9*. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed.

A gauge Ⓐ also shows the current total consumption of all other consumers.

Economy tips

In certain situations, economy tips appear automatically for a short time in the efficiency program ⇨ *fig. 10*. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption.

To turn an economy tip off immediately after it appears, press any button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Tips

– If you erase the data in the efficiency program, the values in the on-board computer will also be reset.

– Once you have turned an economy tip off, it will only appear again after you turn the ignition on again.
– The economy tips are not displayed in every instance, but rather in intervals over a period of time.

Odometer

Fig. 11 Instrument cluster: odometer and reset button

The display of distance driven is shown in miles "mi" or kilometers "km". The units of measurement (kilometers/miles) can be changed in the Infotainment system.

Trip odometer and odometer

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances.

The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing the reset button.

The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Malfunction indicator

If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.

Time/date display

The date, time of day and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system. Refer to the Infotainment system operating manual for instructions.

When you open the driver's door, the date and time appear in the instrument cluster display for 30 seconds.

Head-up display

Applies to: vehicles with Head-up Display

Fig. 12 Example: indicators in the Head-up display

Fig. 13 Instrument panel: knob for the head-up display

The Head-up display projects certain warnings or selected information from the assist systems* or navigation* on the windshield. The display appears within the driver's field of vision.

Switching on/off

▸ To switch the head-up display on or off, press the knob ⇨ *fig. 13*.

Adjusting the height

The height of the display can be adjusted to the individual driver.

▸ Make sure you are seated correctly ⇨ *page 129*.
▸ Turn the knob to adjust the display.

Settings in the Infotainment system

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > ▶

Head-up display > **Head-up display contents** or **Display brightness**.

Display content

In the Infotainment system, you can specify which information should be displayed: For example, this can include navigation information*, Adaptive cruise control* or night vision assist*.

The display of certain information and some of the red indicator lights cannot be hidden in the Infotainment system.

Display brightness

You can adjust the display brightness in the Infotainment system. The display brightness decreases automatically as the amount of light decreases. The background brightness is adjusted with the instrument illumination ⇨ *page 44*.

Note

To prevent scratches on the glass covering the head-up display, do not place any objects in the projection opening.

Tips

– Sunglasses with polarization filters and unfavorable lighting conditions can have a negative effect on the display.
– An optimum display depends on the seat position and the height adjustment of the head-up display.
– A special windshield is needed for the head-up display function.
– For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *table on page 233*.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

The Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) in the instrument cluster is part of the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD II) system.

The warning/indicator light illuminates when the ignition is switched on and goes out after the engine starts and the idle has stabilized. This indicates that the MIL is working properly.

If the light does not go out after the engine is started, or illuminates while you are driving, a malfunction may exist in the engine system. If the light illuminates, the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Continue driving **with reduced power** (avoiding sustained high speeds and/or rapid accelerations) and have the condition corrected. Contact your authorized Audi dealer.

If the light illuminates, the electronic speed limiter may also be malfunctioning. For more information ⇨ *page 26, Electronic speed limiter*.

An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL light to illuminate ⇨ *page 192*.

On-Board Diagnostics

Fig. 14 Location of Data Link Connector (DLC)

On-Board Diagnostics monitors the components of your emission control system. Each monitored component in your engine system has been assigned a code. In case of a malfunction, the component will be identified and the fault stored as a code in the control module memory.

The MIL light may also illuminate if there is a leak in the on-board fuel vapor recovery system. If the light illuminates after a refuelling, stop the vehicle and make sure the fuel filler cap is properly closed ⇨ *page 192*.

In order to make an accurate diagnosis, the stored data can only be displayed using special diagnostic equipment (generic scan tool for OBD). ▶

In order to connect the special diagnostic equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC). The DLC is located to the right of the hood release ⇨ *fig. 14*.

Your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station can interpret the code and perform the necessary repair.

WARNING

Do not use the diagnostic connector for personal use. Incorrect usage can cause malfunctions, which can increase the risk of a collision!

Electronic speed limiter

Your vehicle may be factory equipped with tires that are rated for a maximum speed of 130 mph (210 km/h). This is less than the maximum speed of your vehicle. To reduce the risk of sudden tire failure and loss of control if the vehicle is operated at excessive speeds, your vehicle also has an electronic speed limiter. The electronic speed limiter prevents your vehicle from going faster than the tire speed rating. For more information ⇨ *page 217*.

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle road speed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

S models

Your vehicle's top speed is electronically limited to 155 mph (250 km/h).

If the engine control unit receives faulty vehicle roadspeed signals, the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) will illuminate. If this occurs, contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer for assistance.

WARNING

Always observe the posted speed limits and adjust your speed to suit prevailing road, traffic and weather conditions. Never drive your vehicle faster than the maximum speed rating of the tires installed.

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 30*,
– Sensors in the door handles* ⇨ *page 30*,
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 32*, or
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 31*.

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle. If the blinking continues, one of the doors or the luggage compartment lid/hood is not closed or the ignition is still switched on.

Auto Lock

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

The vehicle can be unlocked if the opening function in the central locking system switch is used or one of the door handles is pulled.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 32*.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– When locking using the button in the central locking switch, the vehicle will not lock if a door is open ⇨ *page 31*.
– On vehicles with a convenience key*, the luggage compartment lid unlocks again after closing if the most recently used key is in the luggage compartment. The emergency flashers blink four times.

Do not lock your vehicle with the remote control key or convenience key* until all doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed. This helps to prevent you from locking yourself out accidentally.

Closing aid on the doors*

The vehicle doors are equipped with closing aids. When closing a door, you only have to let it fall lightly into the latch. It then closes automatically ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– When you lock your vehicle from outside, nobody - especially children - should remain inside the vehicle. Remember, when you lock the vehicle from the outside the windows cannot be opened from the inside.
– When you leave the vehicle, always take the ignition key with you. This will prevent passengers (children, for example) from accidentally being locked in the vehicle should they accidentally press the power locking switch in the doors.
– Do not leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised. In an emergency it would be impossible to open the doors from the outside without the key.
– Applies to vehicles with power side door closer*:
  – When closing a door, make sure nothing can interfere with the door. This could cause serious personal injury.
  – You can stop the door from closing at any time by pulling on the inside or outside door handle.

Tips

- Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
- The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set

Fig. 15 Your vehicle key set

Ⓐ Remote control key with integrated mechanical key

You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. A mechanical key is integrated in the remote control key ⇨ *page 29*.

Ⓑ Separate mechanical key

This key is not intended for constant use. It should only be used in an emergency. Do not carry it on your key ring and do not store it in the vehicle.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Service & checks** > **Programmed keys**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle.

Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

When driving, service and maintenance-relevant data is continuously stored in your remote control key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Personal convenience settings

If two people use one vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses “their own” master key. When the ignition is turned off or when the vehicle is locked, personal convenience settings for the following systems are stored and assigned to the remote master key.

- Climate control system
- Central locking
- Windows
- Interior lighting*
- Memory function*
- Parking aid*
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Active lane assist*
- Side assist*
- Drive select
- Night vision assistant*
- Steering wheel heating*

The stored settings are automatically recalled when you unlock the vehicle, open the doors or turn on the ignition.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children ▶

could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.

Tips

- The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment).
- Using the mechanical key, you can:
  - Lock/unlock the glove compartment.
  - Manually lock/unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.
  - Mechanically lock the doors ⇨ *page 32*.
- For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 262*.

Removing the integrated mechanical key

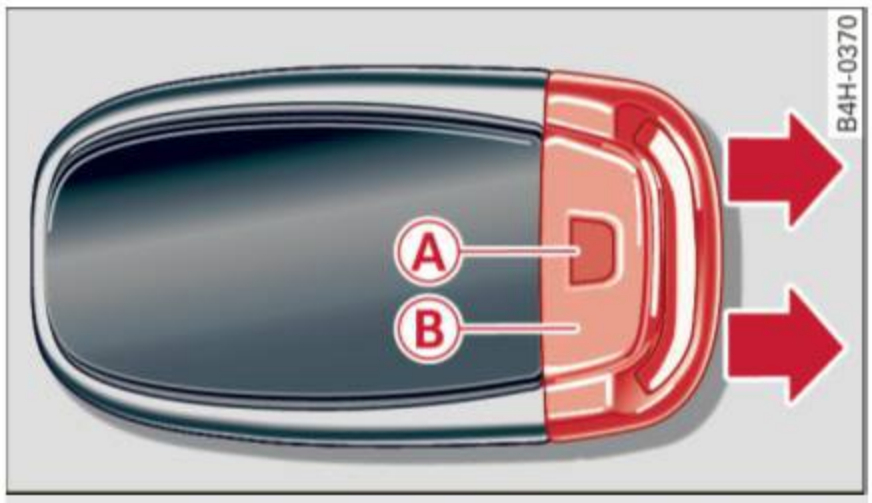

Fig. 16 Remote control master key: removing the mechanical key

- Press the release button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 16*.
- Pull the mechanical key Ⓑ out of the remote control key.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

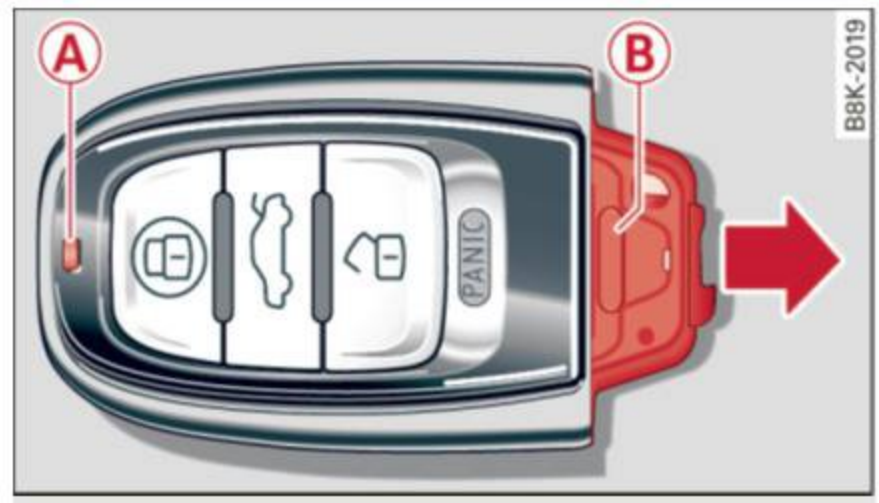

Fig. 17 Remote control key: removing the battery holder

LED in the remote control key

The LED Ⓐ informs you about the function of the remote control key.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press and hold a button longer (convenience opening), the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is dead. The indicator light and the message **Please change key battery** appear. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
- Press the release button Ⓑ on the battery holder and pull the battery holder out of the remote control key in the direction of the arrow at the same time.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" symbol facing down.
- Slide the battery holder carefully into the remote control key.
- Insert the mechanical key.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

The replacement battery must meet the same specifications as the original battery in the remote control key.

Unlocking/locking by remote control

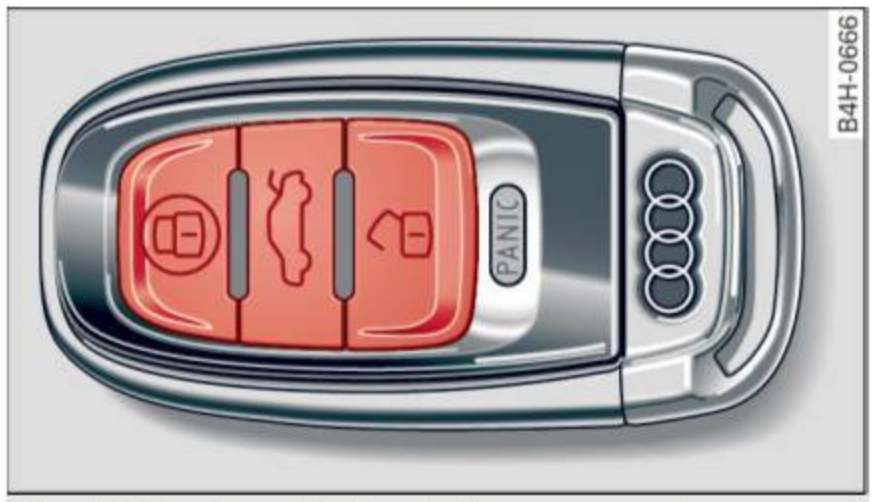

Fig. 18 Remote control key: button programming

- To unlock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ *fig. 18*.
- To lock the vehicle, press the button **one time** ⇨ ⚠.
- To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button briefly.
- To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button. The vehicle horn and emergency flashers are activated.
- To turn the alarm off, press the red PANIC button again.

If the vehicle is unlocked and none of the doors, the rear lid or hood are opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle locks again automatically. This feature prevents the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked over a long period of time.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.

Tips

– Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
– The vehicle can only be locked when the selector lever is in the P position.
– Do not use the remote control when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could unintentionally lock the vehicle. If you then tried to start the engine or open a door, the alarm would be triggered. If this happens, press the unlock button.
– Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Locking and unlocking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked/locked without using the remote control key.

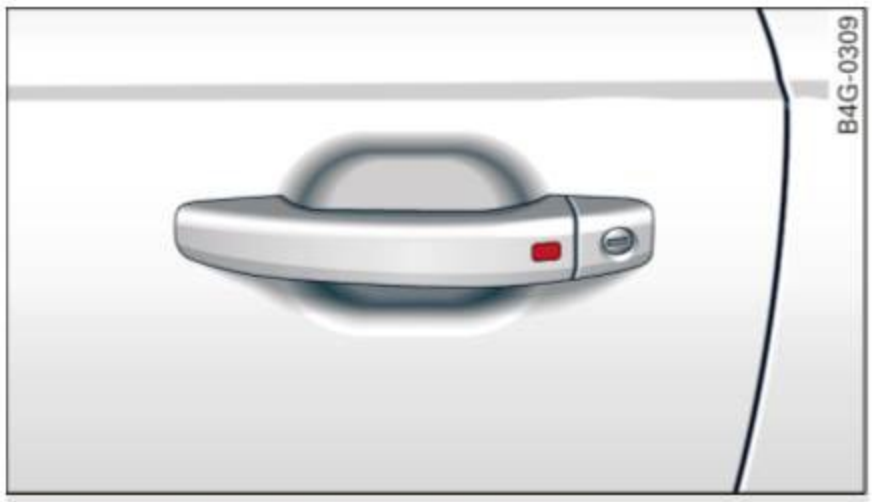

Fig. 19 Door handle: locking the vehicle

Unlocking the vehicle

- Grip the door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- Place the selector lever in the P position (automatic transmissions), or else the vehicle will not be able to lock.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor in the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 19*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

You can unlock/lock the vehicle at every door. The remote control key cannot be more than approximately 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the master ▶

key is in your jacket pocket or in your briefcase, for example.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This way you have the opportunity to check if the doors locked correctly.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– The energy management system gradually turns off unnecessary convenience functions to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the vehicle's ability to start for as long as possible. You may not be able to unlock your vehicle using the convenience key.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 262*.

Central locking switch

Fig. 20 Driver's door: central locking switch

Fig. 21 Rear door: central locking switch

▸ To lock the vehicle, press the button ⇨ ⚠.
▸ To unlock the vehicle, press the button .

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– Opening the door and the luggage compartment lid from the *outside* is not possible (for security reasons, such as when stopped at a light).
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– Applies to: front doors: you can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– Rear doors: to unlock the doors, pull on the door handle *one time*. To open the doors, pull on the door handle *again*.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) (Auto ▸

Lock) ⇨ *page 27*. You can unlock the vehicle again using the button in the central locking switch.

Setting the central locking system

In the Infotainment system, you can set which doors the central locking system will unlock.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **(Central locking)***.

Door unlocking - you can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver** door should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver** in a vehicle with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control key twice.

Disable tailgate handle - If you select **On**, the luggage compartment lid handle is locked. In this case the luggage compartment lid can be opened with the button on the remote control key or with the button* in the driver's door. In vehicles with a convenience key*, you can still open the luggage compartment lid using the handle if an authorized remote control key is near the proximity sensor*.

Fold mirrors when locking* - if you select **On**, the exterior rearview mirrors fold in automatically when you press the button on the remote control key or touch the sensor* in the handle.

Tone when locking [1] - if you select **On**, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle.

Emergency unlocking and locking the doors

Each door must be locked separately if the power locking system fails.

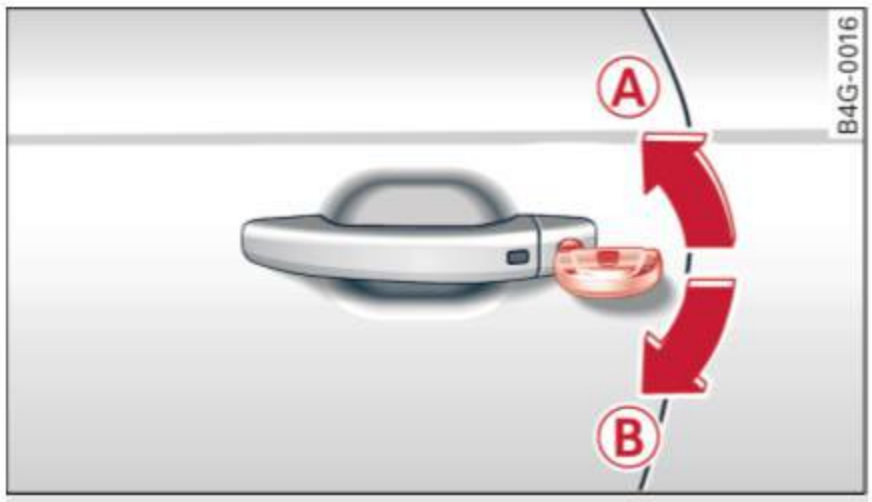

Fig. 22 Driver's door: door lock cylinder

Fig. 23 Door: emergency locking

If the central locking system malfunctions, you must unlock/lock the doors separately using the mechanical key.

Unlocking/locking the driver's door with the mechanical key

- Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29* or use the separate mechanical key.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the open position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 22*.
- To lock the driver's door, move the selector lever to the P position (automatic transmission) and turn the key **one time** to the close position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠.

Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors with the mechanical key

The emergency lock is located on the rear side of the front passenger's door and the rear doors. It is only visible when the door is open. ▶

[1] This function is not available in all countries.

- Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29* or use the separate mechanical key.
- Pull the cap out of the opening ⇨ *fig. 23*.
- Insert the key in the inside slot and turn it all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door).

WARNING

Read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked as usual. It switches off when the vehicle is unlocked.

If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time. Switch the ignition on or press the button on the remote control key to turn off the alarm.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening/closing the luggage compartment lid

Fig. 24 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

Fig. 25 Handle in the rear lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or
- Pull the button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 24*. Or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 25*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Use the inside grip to pull the rear lid and allow it to drop gently to close it ⇨ ⚠.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the luggage compartment lid can be opened using the handle ⇨ *page 32*.

WARNING

- After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could open suddenly when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases can enter the vehicle interior and create the risk of asphyxiation.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.

– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.

Automatic luggage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with automatic luggage compartment lid

The luggage compartment lid can be opened and closed electrically.

Fig. 26 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

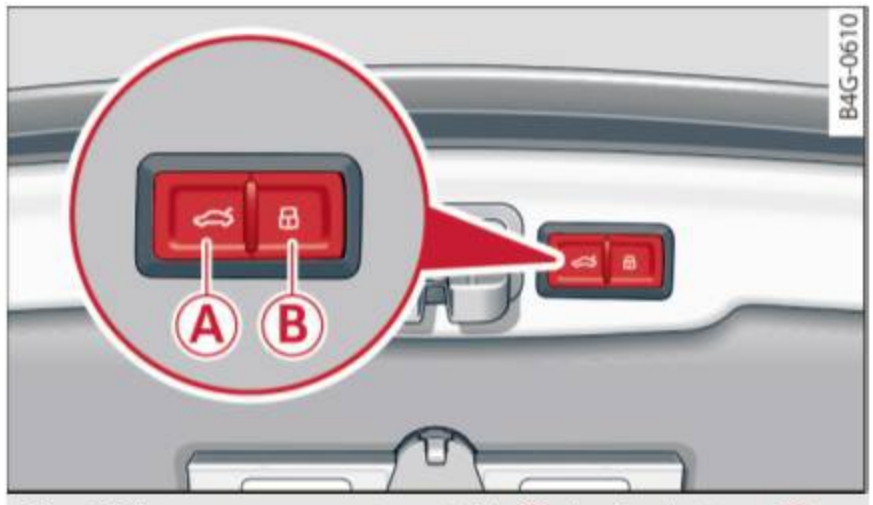

Fig. 27 Luggage compartment lid: (A) closing button, (B) lock button (vehicles with convenience key*)

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second. Or
- Pull the button in the driver's door briefly ⇨ *fig. 26*. Or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- Pull the button in the driver's door until the luggage compartment lid is closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press the button in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 27*. The luggage compartment lid will go down automatically and close ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press and hold the button on the remote control key until the luggage compartment lid is closed (vehicles with convenience key*) ⇨ ⚠. Make sure there is enough distance between you and the luggage compartment lid. There should be a maximum 9 feet (3 m) of distance. Or
- Press the button ⇨ *fig. 27* in the luggage compartment lid (vehicles with convenience key*). The remote control key must not be more than approximately 4 ft (1.5 m) away from the luggage compartment and it must not be inside the vehicle. The luggage compartment lid will automatically close and lock. The vehicle locks ⇨ ⚠. Or
- Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid. The luggage compartment lid will go down automatically and close ⇨ ⚠.

The opening/closing process will stop immediately if:

– You pull/release the button in the driver's door, or
– You press/release the button on the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*), or
– You press the or button (vehicles with convenience key*) in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You push the handle in the luggage compartment lid, or
– You press against the luggage compartment lid against the direction it is moving, or
– When something blocks the luggage compartment lid or makes it difficult for the lid to move.

If you press the handle or one of the or buttons (vehicles with convenience key*) now, the luggage compartment lid will either open or close, depending on what angle it is at. ▶

WARNING

- Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 27*.
- After closing the luggage compartment lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed. Otherwise it could open suddenly when the vehicle is moving.
- To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the luggage compartment lid closed while driving. Never transport objects larger than those which fit completely into the luggage area, because then the luggage compartment lid cannot be fully closed.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the luggage compartment lid left open. A child could crawl into the car through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut, becoming trapped and unable to get out. To reduce the risk of personal injury, never let children play in or around your vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid as well as the vehicle doors closed when not in use.
- Never close the luggage compartment lid inattentively or without checking first. Although the closing force of the luggage compartment lid is limited, you can still seriously injure yourself or others.
- Always ensure that no one is within range of the luggage compartment lid when it is moving, in particular close to the hinges and the upper and lower edges - fingers or hands can be pinched.
- Never try to interfere with the luggage compartment lid or help it when it is being opened or closed automatically.

Note

The luggage compartment lid can bump into objects such as the garage ceiling when opening and become damaged.

Tips

- The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the luggage compartment lid can be opened using the handle ⇨ *page 32*.
- There are audio signals when closing the luggage compartment lid with the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*) or with the button in the driver's door.
- When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
- You can close the luggage compartment lid using the remote control key (vehicles with convenience key*) up to a distance of approximately 9 feet (3 m).
- The luggage compartment lid can be operated manually if the vehicle battery is low. It is necessary to use more force when doing this. Move the lid slowly to reduce the amount of force needed.

Luggage compartment with movement-activated opening

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key and sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid

Fig. 28 Rear of the vehicle: foot movement

Requirements: you must be carrying your vehicle key with you. You must be standing at the center behind the luggage compartment lid. You should be approximately 8 in (20 cm) from the rear of the vehicle. The ignition must be switched off. Make sure you have firm footing.

▸ Move your foot back and forth below the bumper ⇨ *fig. 28*. Do not touch the bumper. Once the system recognizes the movement, the luggage compartment lid will open.

The luggage compartment lid will only open if you make the movement as described. This prevents the luggage compartment lid from opening ▶

due to similar movements, such as when you walk between the rear of the vehicle and your garage door.

General information

In some situations, the function may be limited or temporarily unavailable. This may happen if:

– the luggage compartment lid was closed immediately before.
– you park close to a hedge and the branches move back and forth under the vehicle for a long period of time.
– you clean your vehicle, for example with a pressure washer or in a car wash.
– there is heavy rain.
– the bumper is very dirty, for example after driving on salt-covered roads.
– there is interference to the radio signal from the vehicle key, such as from cell phones or remote controls.

Luggage compartment lid emergency release

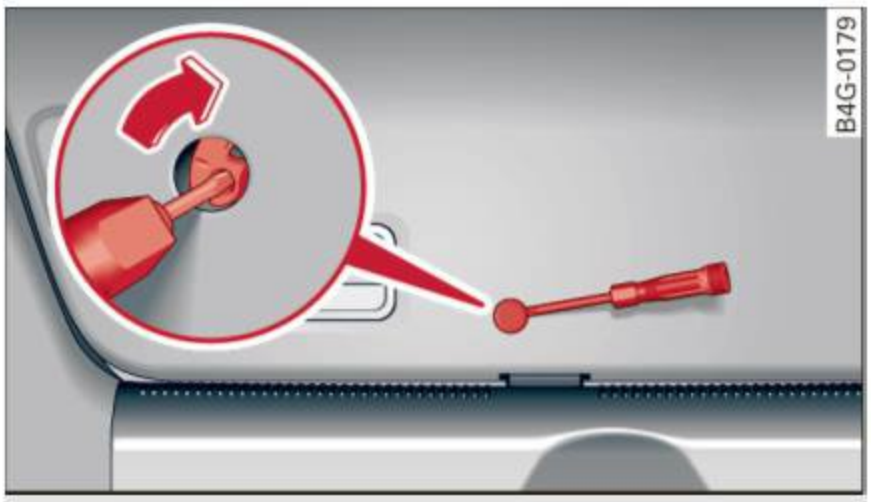

Fig. 29 Inner luggage compartment lid: access to the emergency release

▸ Pry the cover off using a screwdriver or the mechanical key ⇨ *fig. 29*. Remove the mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
▸ Press the lever in the direction of the arrow to release the luggage compartment lid.

Opening the luggage compartment lid from the inside in an emergency

Fig. 30 Inner luggage compartment lid: lever

▸ Pull the lever downward ⇨ *fig. 30*.

Tips

Never close the luggage compartment lid using the emergency handle.

Child safety lock

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from be operated.

Fig. 31 Section of driver's door: child safety lock buttons

▸ To activate/deactivate the inner door handle and the power window switch for the respective rear door, press the left/right button in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 31*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
▸ To activate/deactivate the child safety lock on both sides, you must press the buttons one after the other.

WARNING

Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of ▸

time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

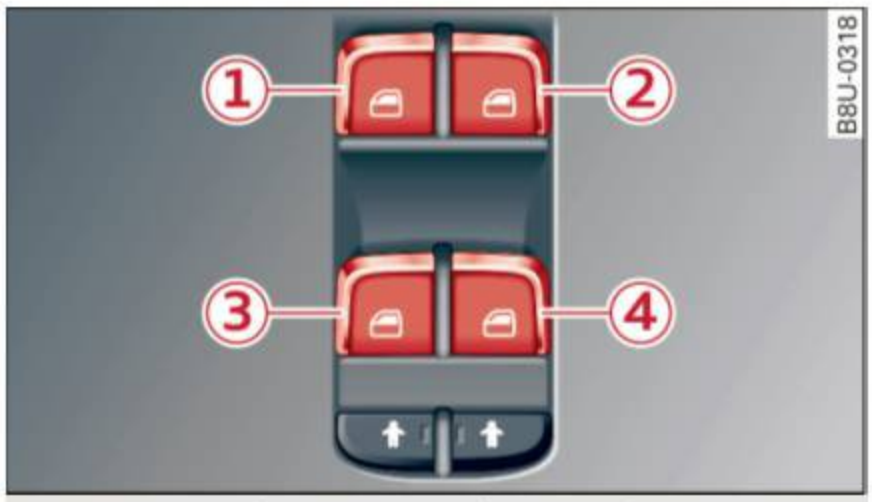

Fig. 32 Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

Opening and closing the windows

- ▸ To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed/pulled again.
- ▸ To select a position in between opened and closed, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached.

Power window switches

① Left front door
② Right front door
③ Left rear door
④ Right rear door

WARNING

– Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident. The power windows continue to function until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

You can still open and close the windows for approximately 10 minutes after turning the ignition off. The power windows do not switch off until the driver's door or front passenger's door has been opened.

Convenience opening

All of the windows and the sunroof can be opened at once.*

The settings in the Infotainment system specify which windows will open.

Convenience opening feature

- ▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key until all of the windows reach the desired position and the sunroof* is tilted open.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

- ▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking** > **Long-press to open windows**.

To enable convenience opening of the windows and the roof*, the **Front windows**, **Rear windows** and **Roof** functions must be switched **On**.

WARNING

For security reasons, the windows and the sunroof* can only be opened with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6 feet (2 m) from the vehicle.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

- Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.
- Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

Sunroof

Description

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

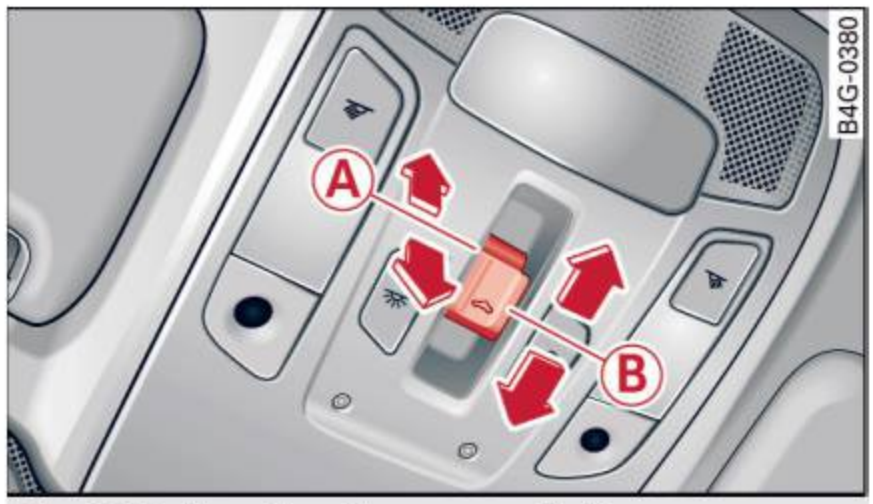

Fig. 33 Section of headliner: sunroof button

Ⓐ Tilting/sliding

- To tilt the sunroof completely, press the switch briefly to the second level.
- To open the sunroof completely, pull the switch briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Opening/sliding (version 1)

- To move the roof into the reduced wind noise position, press the button back briefly to the second level. The roof will open all the way if you press the button back to the second level again.
- To close the sunroof completely, press the switch forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Opening/sliding (version 2)

- To open the sunroof completely, press the switch back to just before the second level.
- To close the sunroof completely, press the switch forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back to the first level until the desired position is reached.

The sunshade can be opened and closed by hand when the roof is closed. The sunshade opens automatically when the roof is opened.

You can still operate the sliding/tilting sunroof for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.

⚠ WARNING

Pay careful attention when closing the sliding/tilting sunroof - otherwise serious injury could result! Always take the ignition key with you when leaving the vehicle.

Note

Always close your sliding/tilting sunroof when leaving your vehicle. Sudden rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

– For information on convenience opening, refer to ⇨ *page 37*.
– The sunroof will only open down to -20 °C (-4 °F).

Sunroof power emergency closing

Applies to: vehicles with sliding/tilting sunroof

If the sunroof detects an object in its path when it is closing, it will open again automatically. In this case, you can close the roof with the power emergency closing function.

- Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

If you let go of the switch early, the sunroof will open again.

Valet Parking function

Applies to: vehicles with Valet Parking function

The valet parking function protects the luggage compartment from unauthorized access.

Fig. 34 Glove compartment: valet parking function button

You can switch the valet parking function on, for example when someone else is parking your vehicle [1]. When the function is switched on, the vehicle can be driven, locked and unlocked using the master key, but access to the luggage compartment is not permitted.

- Remove the integrated mechanical key ⇨ *page 29*.
- Open the glove compartment.
- Press the VALET button to switch the valet parking function on. The LED in the button turns on.
- Lock the glove compartment with the mechanical key.
- Applies to vehicles with lockable backrests in the rear: to also secure the luggage compartment from the vehicle interior, lock the backrests using the mechanical key ⇨ *page 57*.
- Only give the remote control key to the service personnel parking your car and keep the removed mechanical key with you.

The following buttons are deactivated when the valet parking function is switched on:

– button in the driver's door
– button on the remote control key
– Handle in the rear lid

When the valet parking function is switched on, the message **Valet parking activated** appears in the instrument cluster display when you switch the ignition on.

Tips

Please note that the luggage compartment can still be accessed from the vehicle interior in vehicles with a pass-through, even when the valet parking function is switched on.

Garage door opener (HomeLink)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Fig. 35 Garage door opener: examples of usage for different systems

With the garage door opener (HomeLink), you can activate systems such as the garage doors, security systems or house lights from inside your vehicle. Three buttons are integrated in the headliner that can be programmed to up to three remote controls.

To be able to operate systems using the garage door opener, the buttons in the headliner must first be programmed.

WARNING

When operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no people or objects are in the area immediately surrounding the equipment. People can be injured or property can be damaged if struck when closing.

[1] This function is not available in all countries.

Tips

– For security reasons, we recommend that you clear the programmed buttons before selling the vehicle.
– For additional information about HomeLink, visit www.homelink.com.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 262*.

Programming buttons

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Fig. 36 Headliner: controls

You can program both fixed code and rolling code systems using this procedure.

Programming/reprogramming buttons

▸ Switch the ignition on.
▸ Press and hold the button in the headliner that you would like to program for at least 10 seconds. Or
▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Program garage door opener**.
▸ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment system.

Deleting button programming

The programmed buttons cannot be deleted individually. They must be deleted all at once. Reprogram the buttons if necessary.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Clear program settings** > **Yes**.

Displaying the version/status/country code

▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Garage door opener** > **Version information**.

Tips

The garage door opener may need to be synchronized with the system motor after the programming. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for doing this.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener (HomeLink)

Requirements: the button in the headliner must be programmed ⇨ *page 40* and the vehicle must be within range of the system, such as the garage door.

▸ Press the button to open the garage door. The LED Ⓐ ⇨ *page 40, fig. 36* blinks or turns on.
▸ Press the button again to open the garage door.

Tips

When opening or closing the garage door, do not press and hold the button longer ten seconds or the garage door opener will switch to programming mode.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off

Fig. 37 Instrument panel: light switch with all weather lights

Light switch

Turn the switch to the corresponding position. When the lights are switched on, the symbol turns on.

O - The lights are off or the daytime running lights are on:

- **USA models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 37* is in the **O** position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions). The **Daytime running lights** function can be turned on and off in the MMI ⇨ *page 43*, ⇨ ⚠.
- **Canada models:** The daytime running lights will come on automatically when the ignition is on and the light switch ⇨ *fig. 37* is in the **O** position, the position or the **AUTO** position (only in daylight conditions) ⇨ ⚠.

AUTO - automatic headlights switch on and off depending on brightness, for example in twilight, during rain or in tunnels.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

- All weather lights

- Rear fog lights

All-weather lights

The front lights are adjusted automatically so that there is less glare for the driver from his or her own lights, for example when roads are wet.

Automatic dynamic headlight range control system

Your vehicle is equipped with a headlight range control system so that there is less glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range also adjusts automatically when braking and accelerating.

Light functions

The following light functions may be available depending on vehicle equipment and only function when the light switch is in the AUTO position.

Static cornering light* - The cornering light switches on automatically at speeds up to approximately 44 mph (70 km) when the steering wheel is at a certain angle. The area to the side of the vehicle is illuminated better when turning.

WARNING

- Automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beam under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark .
- The rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations, to prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle.
- Always observe legal regulations when using the lighting systems described.

Tips

- The light sensor for the automatic headlights is located in the rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
- Some exterior lighting functions can be adjusted ⇨ *page 43*.

– If you turn off the ignition while the exterior lights are on and open the door, a warning tone sounds.
– In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

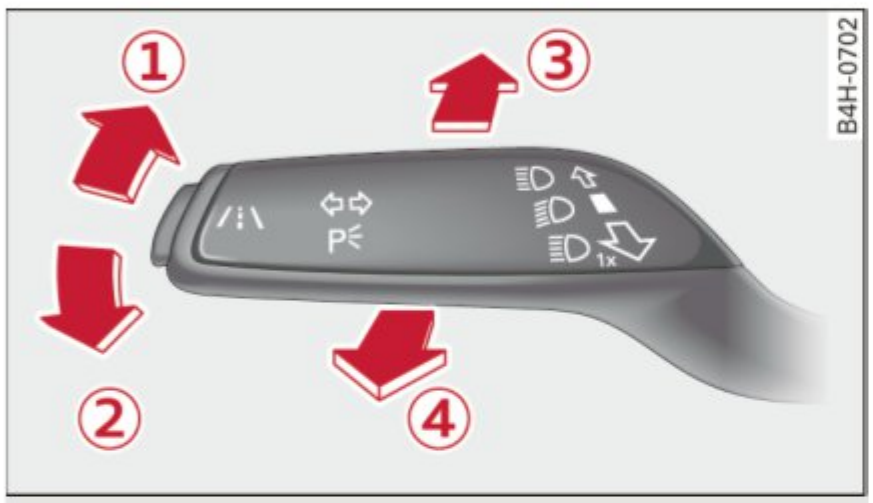

Fig. 38 Turn signal and high beam lever

Turn signals ⇦ ⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on.

① - right turn signal

② - left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

High beams and headlight flasher

Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - high beams on (vehicles with High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 42*)

④ - high beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed and other environmental and traffic conditions.

Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to the AUTO position and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 43*.

▸ To activate the high beam assistant, tap the lever forward ③. The indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display and the high beam headlights are switched on/off automatically. The indicator light also turns on if the high beams are switched on.

Switching the high beams on/off manually

If the high beams did not switch on/off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, tap the lever forward ③. The indicator light turns on.
▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assistant is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant remains active. ▸

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Headlight assist: System fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

Headlight assist: Unavailable No camera view

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris.

The sensor is located between the interior rear-view mirror and the windshield. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

WARNING

High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

- In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
- On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
- When there are road users that do not have sufficient lighting, such as bicyclers or vehicles with dirty tail lamps.
- In tight curves and on steep hills.
- In poorly lit areas.
- With strong reflectors, such as signs.
- If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation sensitivity - you can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Auto-dimming high beams* - you can switch the high beam assistant* **On** and **Off**.

Daytime running lights*

USA models: the daytime running lights can be switched on/off. Select **On** or **Off**.

Canada models: this function cannot be switched off. They activate automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Coming home, Leaving home

The coming home function illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you turn the ignition off and open the driver's door. To turn the function on, select **Lights when leaving car** > **On**.

The leaving home illuminates the area outside the vehicle when you unlock the vehicle. To turn the function on, select **Lights when unlocking car** > **On**.

The coming home and leaving home functions only operate when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Emergency flashers

Fig. 39 Center console: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

▸ Press the button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the ▸

turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Interior lighting

Front and rear interior lighting

Fig. 40 Front headliner: interior lighting controls

Fig. 41 Rear headliner: Reading light

Press the corresponding button ⇨ *fig. 40*:

- Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

- Reading lights on/off

* - Switching the rear reading lights on/off from the cockpit.

Ambient lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

You can adjust the brightness of the interior lighting.

- In the Infotainment system, select: CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting** > **Brightness**.
- To increase or reduce the brightness, turn the knob and press it.

The interior lighting turns on when you switch the headlights on while the ignition is on.

Tips

The setting is automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is being used.

Instrument illumination

The brightness of the illumination for the instruments, display and head-up display can be adjusted.*

Fig. 42 Instrument illumination

- Press the knob to release it.
- Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
- Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

The instrument illumination for the needles and dials turns on when the ignition is turned on and the lights are turned off. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors

Fig. 43 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

/ - adjusts the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heat the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folds the exterior mirrors*. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 32*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror tilts slightly. For this to happen, the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's outside mirror.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (convex or aspheric*) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. Your may estimate incorrectly when you use these mirrors to gauge your distance from the vehicles behind you when changing lanes, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– If the mirror housing was moved by force (for example, by running into an object when maneuvering the vehicle), the mirror must be folded all the way in using the power folding function. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this would impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

– If the power adjusting function malfunctions, the glass in both mirrors can be adjusted by pressing on the edge of it by hand.
– The exterior mirror settings are stored with the memory function* ⇨ *page 52*.

Dimming the mirrors

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic dimming rearview mirror.*

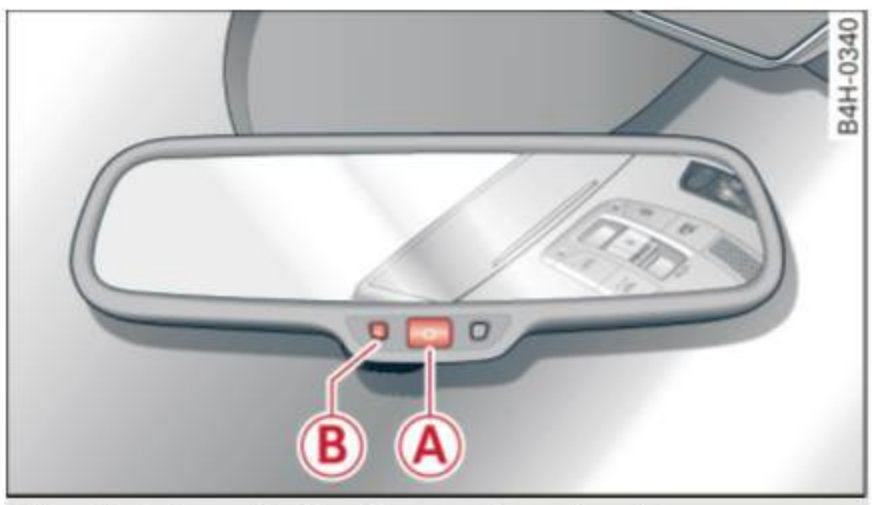

Fig. 44 Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back. ▶

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ Press the button Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 44*. The indicator light Ⓑ turns on. Interior and exterior mirrors* will dim when there is incoming light (such as headlights from the rear).

WARNING

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.

– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible.
– If electrolyte fluid enters the eyes, flush them thoroughly with a large amount of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

If the glass on an automatic dimming mirror breaks, electrolyte can leak out. This liquid damages plastic surfaces and paint. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible, for example with a wet sponge.

Tips

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors

Fig. 45 Front passenger's side: sun visor

The sun visors for the driver and front passenger can be released from their mounts and turned toward the doors ①.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror ② opens.

Sunshades on the rear doors

Applies to: vehicles with sunshades on the rear doors

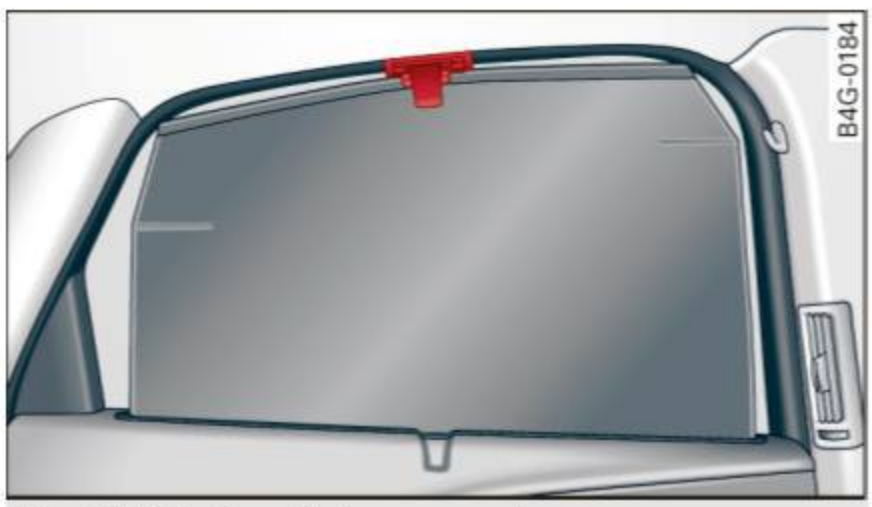

Fig. 46 Raised sunshade on a rear door

▸ Pull the sunshade out and secure it in the hooks on the upper door frame ⇨ *fig. 46*.

Sunshade on the rear window

Applies to: vehicles with a sunshade on the rear window

Applies to: sedan

Fig. 47 Center console: button for rear window sunshade

▸ To raise/lower the sunshade, press the button ⇨ *fig. 47* in the cockpit.

The rear window sunshade can be set so that it retracts automatically when driving in reverse. To do this, select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Automatic rear blind** > **On**. The sunshade is extended again as soon as the vehicle is traveling forward at a speed greater than 9 mph (15 km/h) if the ignition has not been switched off in the meantime.

WARNING

Never operate the rear window sunshade without paying attention or in an uncontrolled manner. Pinching could cause serious injuries.

Tips

– Pressing the button several times in a row can trigger the overload protection. The sunshade can only be extended/retracted again after a brief waiting period.
– The rear window sunshade only functions when the vehicle interior is warmer than 14°F (-10°C).

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

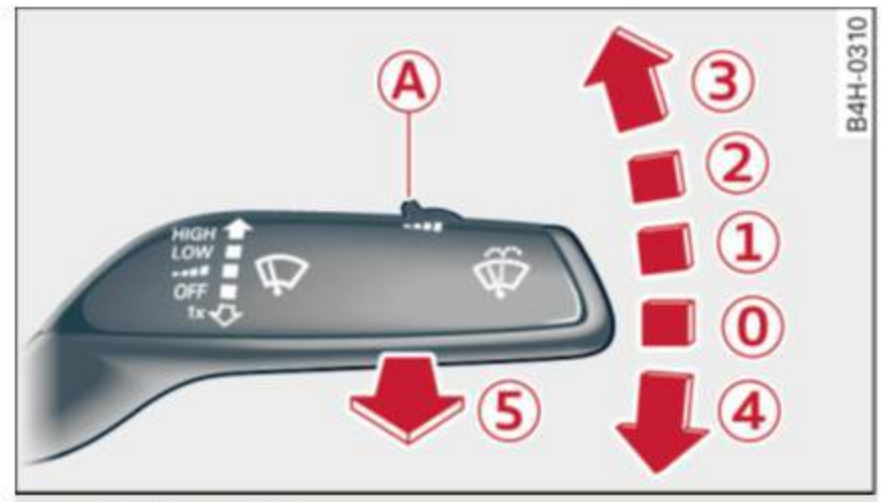

Fig. 48 Windshield wiper lever

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - windshield wipers off

① - rain sensor mode. The windshield wipers switch on once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h) and it is raining. The higher the rain sensor sensitivity is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor** > **Off**. In intermittent mode, you can adjust the interval time using the switch Ⓐ.

② - slow wiping

③ - fast wiping

④ - single wipe If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - clean the windshield The wipers wipe one time after several seconds of driving to remove water droplets. You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Cleaning the headlights*. The headlight washer system* operates only when the low beam headlights are on. If you move the lever to position ▸

⑤, the headlights and the night vision assist camera* are cleaned at intervals.

WARNING

– The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
– The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness or low sun, can result in increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
– Properly functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 48, Replacing windshield wiper blades*.

Note

– If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
– Prior to using a car wash, the windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position 0). This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

– The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched back on by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
– Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
– The washer fluid nozzles for the windshield washer system are heated at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
– When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Use a soft cloth and a glass cleaner.

▸ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 48*.
▸ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Replacing windshield wiper blades

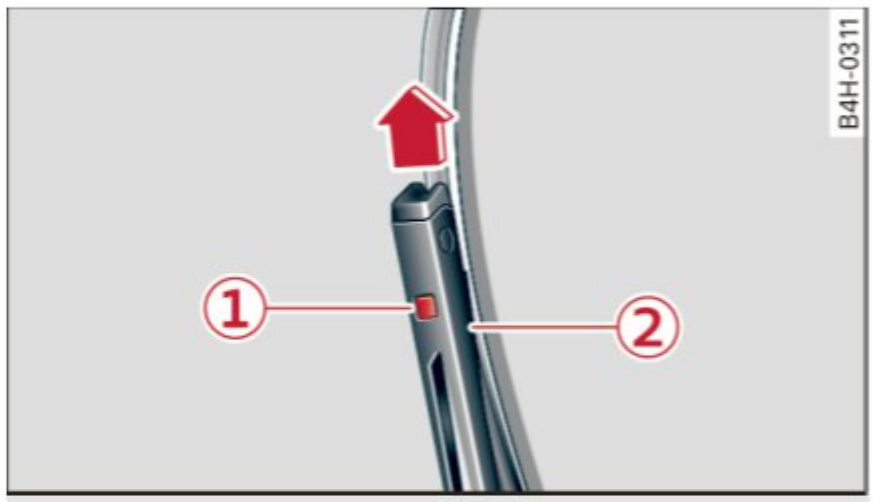

Fig. 49 Removing windshield wiper blades

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

▸ Switch the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever to position ④ briefly ⇨ *page 47, fig. 48*. The windshield wipers move into the service position.
▸ To bring the wiper blades back into the original position, switch the ignition on and operate the windshield wiper lever.

You can also turn the service position on or off in the Infotainment system:

▸ Switch the windshield wipers off (position ⓪ ⇨ *page 47, fig. 48*).
▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Service & checks** > **Wiper change position**. > **On/Off**

Removing the wiper blade

▸ Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield. ▸

- Press the locking knob (1) ⇨ *fig. 49* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm (2) until it clicks into place.
- Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– Only fold the windshield wipers away when they are in the service position. Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not move your vehicle or operate the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Seats and storage

General information

WARNING

Refer to ⇨ *page 128, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Front seats

Power seat adjustment

Applies to vehicles with power adjustable seats

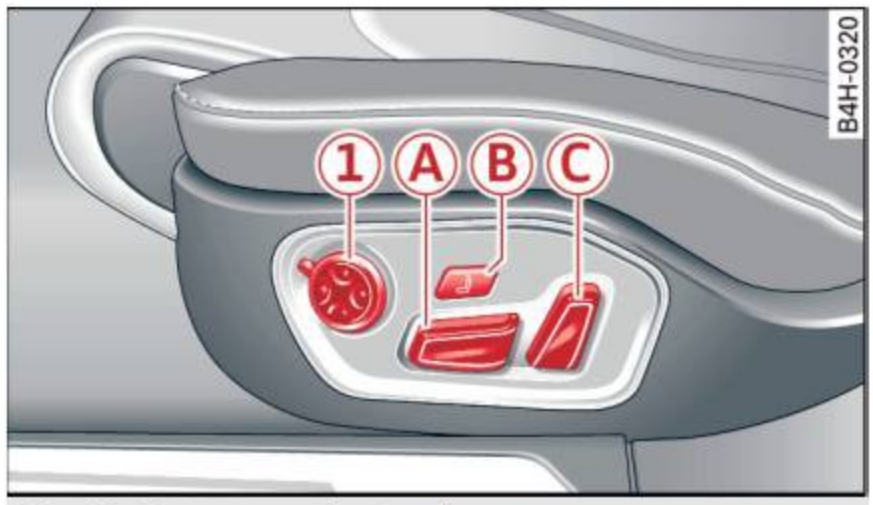

Fig. 50 Front seat: adjusting the seat

Ⓐ - Moving the seat forward/back: press the button forward/back.

Ⓐ - Moving the seat up/down: press the button up/down. To adjust the front seat cushion, press the front button up/down. To adjust the rear seat cushion, press the rear button up/down.

Ⓑ - Switching the massage function* on/off. Select the type of massage with the multifunction button ⇨ *page 50*.

Ⓒ - adjusting the backrest angle: press the button forward/back.

① - lumbar support or multifunction button* ⇨ *page 50*. To adjust the lumbar support, press the button in the applicable location.

WARNING

– The power front seats can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off. For this reason, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle - they could be injured!

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment can pinch fingers or hands causing injuries.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Multifunction button

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction button

You can adjust the massage function, lumbar support, side bolsters and upper thigh support using the multifunction button.

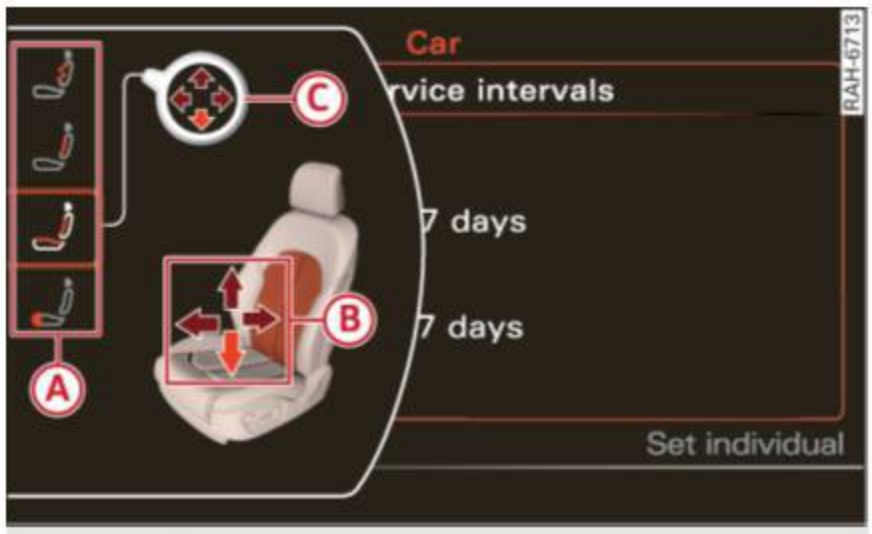

Fig. 51 Infotainment system: seat settings

Operating

- If you turn the multifunction button ① ⇨ *page 50, fig. 50* to the left or to the right, the possible seat settings Ⓐ are shown in the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 51*.
- To select a seat setting, turn the multifunction button ① in the corresponding direction until the desired seat setting is outlined in red.
- The arrows Ⓑ represent the possible adjustments. To lower the lumbar support, for example, press the multifunction button ① downward. The corresponding arrow Ⓒ lights up.

The following seat settings Ⓐ are possible:

Massage function* - select the **Wave, Pulse, Stretch, Lumbar** or **Shoulder** massage type or **off**. You can adjust the intensity of each massage ▶

from 1 through 5. You can switch the selected massage on/off using the button Ⓑ ⇨ *page 50, fig. 50*.

Lumbar support - you can adjust the lumbar support up/down and to be stronger/weaker.

Side section seat* - you can increase/decrease the lateral support in the seat using the side bolsters at the seat surface and the backrest.

Upper thigh support* - you can increase/decrease the upper thigh support.

Tips

– The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.
– The air in the side bolsters* is released as soon as the driver's door opens. This makes is possible to enter and exit the vehicle more comfortably. As soon as you start driving the vehicle, the side bolsters fill.

Center armrest

There is a storage compartment under the armrest.

Fig. 52 Center armrest between the driver's/front passenger's seats.

Adjusting the center armrest

- To adjust the angle, raise the armrest from the starting position.
- To bring the armrest back into the starting position, raise it out of the top notch and fold it back down.

Opening the storage compartment

- Press the button -arrow- upward.

Head restraints

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

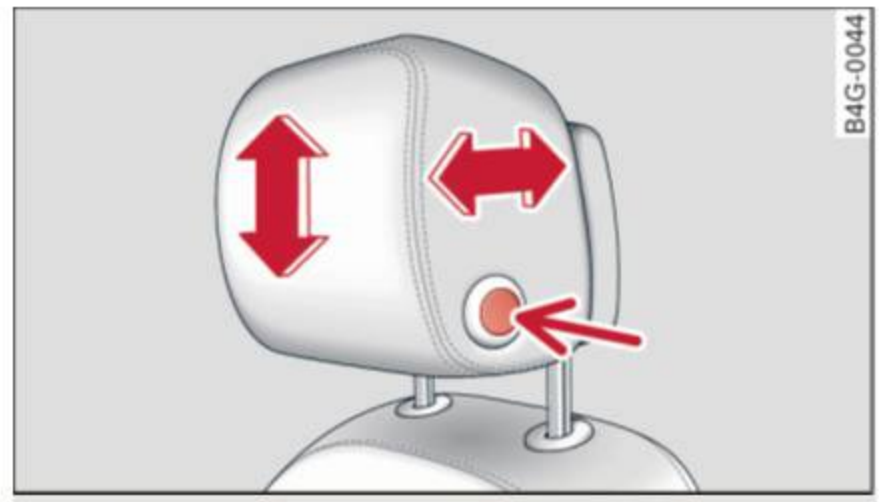

Fig. 53 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint

Adjust the head restraints so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust as close to this position as possible. Push the head restraint as close as possible to the back of the head.

- To move the head restraint up or forward ⇨ *fig. 53*, slide it until it locks into place.
- To move the head restraint down or back, press the button on the side -arrow- and slide the head restraint until it locks into place.

WARNING

– Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 132*.
– Driving with the head restraints not in the upright position increases the risk of serious injury.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

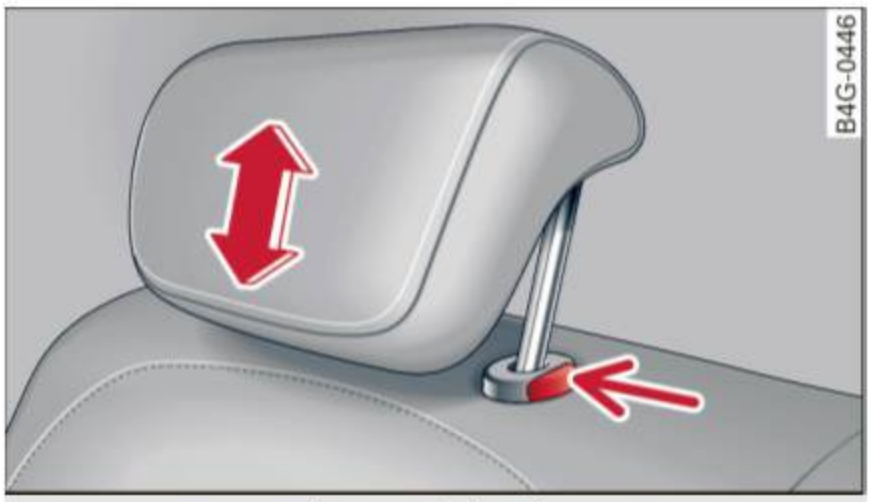

Fig. 54 Rear seat: adjusting the head restraint

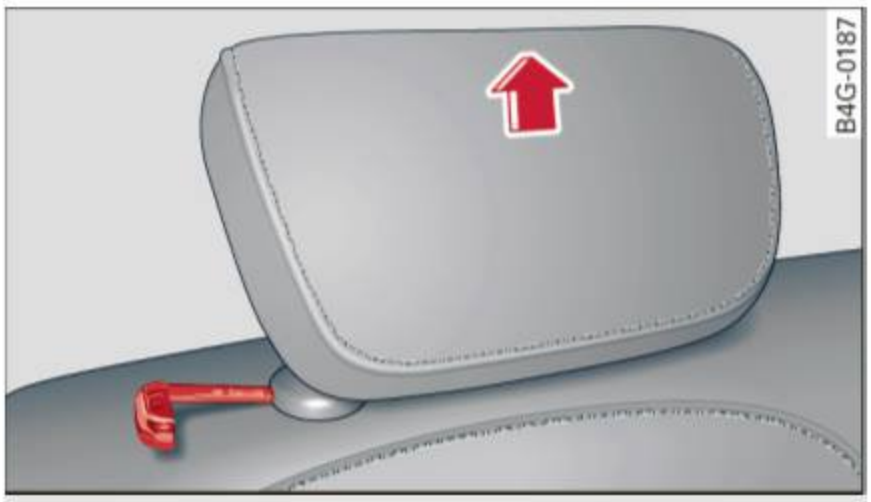

Fig. 55 Rear seat: removing the head restraint, release point

The rear seat head restraints must be raised to the highest position when passengers ride in the rear seats ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 132*

Adjusting the head restraints

- To move the head restraint up, hold it at the sides with both hands and slide it upward until you feel it click into place.
- To move the head restraint down, press the button (arrow) ⇨ *fig. 54* and slide the head restraint downward.

Removing the head restraints

- Move the head restraint upward as far as it can go.
- Press the release point ⇨ *fig. 55* using the mechanical key and press the button ⇨ *fig. 54*. Pull the head restraint out of the backrest at the same time ⇨ ⚠.

Installing the head restraints

- Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.
- Press the button (arrow) ⇨ *fig. 54* and slide the head restraint all the way down. You should not be able to pull the head restraint out of the backrest without pressing the button.

⚠ WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Proper adjustment of head restraints on page 132*.
- Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child seat. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving with the head restraints removed or not in the upright position increases the risk of serious injury.

Memory function

Description

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

Using the memory function, you can quickly and easily store a personal seat profile for the driver and front passenger and recall the settings. The memory function is controlled using the remote control key and the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door*.

The driver's seat profile is stored again and assigned to the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked. When you open the door, the seat profile is automatically recalled. If two people use the vehicle, it is recommended that each person always uses their “own” remote control key.

Two seat profiles can be stored using the memory buttons in the driver's/front passenger's door*. Once they are stored, these seat profiles can be selected at any time.

The following settings are stored: ▶

	Remote control key	Memory button	
	Driver	Driver	Front passenger
Seat	X	X	X
Steering wheel*	X	X	
Both exterior mirrors*	X	X	

Remote control key

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The driver's seat profile can be assigned to the remote control key when the vehicle is locked.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Driver's seat** > **Remote control key** > **On**.

Tips

If you do not wish to have the seat profile for another driver assigned to the remote control key, switch the memory function off in the Infotainment system or using the OFF button ⇨ *page 53*.

Memory buttons

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

Fig. 56 Driver's door: memory function buttons

The memory buttons are located in the driver's/front passenger's* door.

Switching the memory function on/off

- Press the OFF button to switch the memory function on/off. The LED in the button turns on when the memory function is off. Seat profiles are neither stored nor recalled.

Storing a seat profile

- Press the SET button. When the word **SET** lights up, the memory is ready to store settings.
- Now press a memory button briefly. A tone confirms that the settings were stored.

Accessing a seat profile

- If the driver's door is open and the ignition is switched off, press the memory button.
- If the driver's door is closed or the ignition is switched on, press and hold the memory button until the seat adjustment is complete.

WARNING

– For safety reasons, the seat setting can only be recalled when the vehicle is stationary, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.
– If necessary, you can stop the recall process by pressing the OFF button or any memory button.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The driver can move the front passenger's seat into various positions.

Adjusting the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Front passenger's seat** > **Adjust seat position**.
- You can now adjust the front passenger's seat using the driver's seat buttons ⇨ *page 50, fig. 50*.

Align with driver's seat

- To transfer the settings from the driver's seat to the front passenger's seat, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Front passenger's seat** > **Align with driver's seat**. ▶

- Press and hold the control knob until the adjusting process is complete.

Tips

The lumbar support and upper thigh support settings are not transferred when aligning the front passenger's seat with the driver's seat.

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray

Fig. 57 Center console: front ashtray

Fig. 58 Door trim: rear ashtray

Opening/closing

- To open the front ashtray, slide the cover up.
- To close the front ashtray, press down on the cover.
- To open the rear ashtray, tap the cover on the rim.

Emptying

- To empty the front ashtray, pull it upward and out.
- To empty the rear ashtray, press the rear side of the cover down when it is open ⇨ *fig. 58*. The ashtray will lift up out of its mount.
- To insert the ashtray again, press it down into the mount until it locks into place.

WARNING

Never use the ashtray to hold paper, because this increases the risk of a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with a cigarette lighter

Fig. 59 Front center console: cigarette lighter

- Press the cigarette lighter in.
- Remove the cigarette lighter when it pops out.

WARNING

The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

12 Volt sockets

Applies to: vehicles with 12 volt sockets

Fig. 60 Luggage compartment side trim: socket

Fig. 61 Example of a rear center console: sockets*

▸ To reach the 12 Volt socket in the luggage compartment, push the net down.

There are additional 12 Volt socket in the center console under the center armrest* and in the rear ⇨ *fig. 61*.

The 12-volt sockets can be used for electrical accessories. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

WARNING

The sockets and the electrical accessories connected to them only function when the ignition is switched on. Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power, such as solar panels or battery chargers, to the 12 Volt sockets or the cigarette lighter.
– To reduce the risk of damage to the sockets, only use plugs that fit correctly.

Storage

Cup holders

Fig. 62 Center console: front cup holder

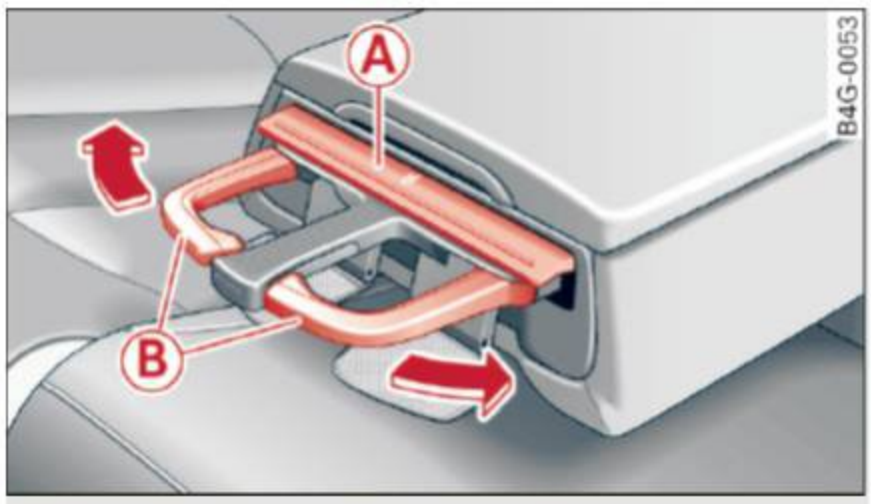

Fig. 63 Rear armrest: rear cup holder*

Front cup holders

▸ Tap on the cover in the center console to open the cup holders.

Rear cup holders*

▸ To open the cup holder, tap on the cover (symbol) Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 63*.
▸ To adjust the cup holder to fit the beverage container, push the corresponding arm Ⓑ in the direction of the arrow.
▸ Place the cup in the holder and release the arm. The arm swings back by itself and secures the beverage.
▸ To close the cup holders, press the center piece between both arms and push the cup holders all the way back into the slot. ▸

WARNING

- Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which can cause injury.
- Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. If not, beverages could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment, such electronics or seat covers.

Cooled glove compartment

Applies to: vehicles with cooled glove compartment

The cooled glove compartment only functions when the A/C system is switched on.

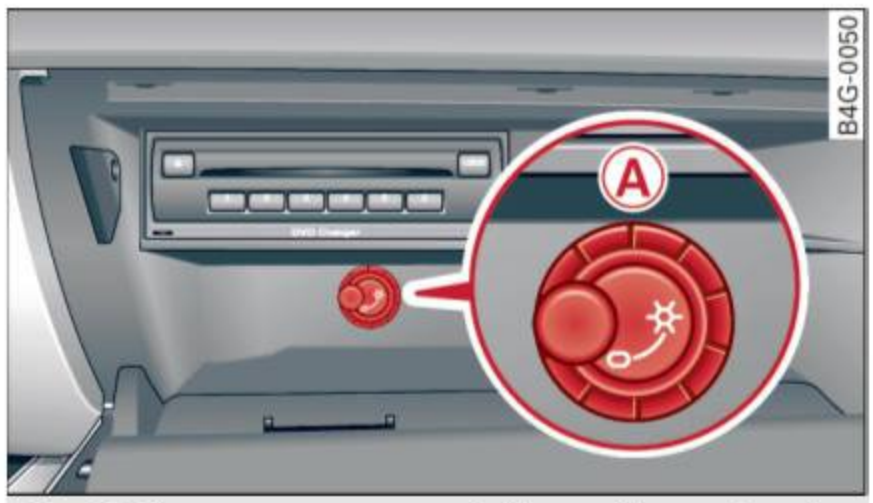

Fig. 64 Glove compartment: switching cooling mode on/off

- Turn the knob (A) counter-clockwise to switch the cooling on. The symbols on the knob indicate the correct position.
- Turn the knob (A) clockwise to switch the cooling off.

The glove compartment cooling mode only functions when the vehicle A/C system is switched on. If the heating is switched on, switching the glove compartment cooling mode off is recommended.

Other storage compartments

You will find a range of storage compartments and holders at different locations in the vehicle.

- Compartments in the doors
- Compartment in the glove compartment (cooled*). The glove compartment can be locked using the mechanical key.
- Glasses holder* in the headliner (near the rear-view mirror)
- Storage compartment under the front center armrest*
- Compartments* on the backrests of the front seats
- Garment hooks on the sides of the pillars in the rear of the vehicle and in the rear grab handles
- Compartment in the rear center armrest
- Two folding hooks*, that are at the upper side of the luggage compartment

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident or sudden stop, always keep the glove compartment closed while driving.
- Always keep the lid of the compartment for (sun)glasses* closed while driving to reduce the risk of injury during a sudden braking maneuver or in the event of an accident.
- Any articles of clothing that you have hung up must not interfere with the driver's view. The coat hooks are designed only for lightweight clothing. Never hang any clothing with hard, pointed or heavy objects in the pockets on the coat hooks. During sudden braking or in an accident - especially if the airbag is deployed - these objects could injure any passengers inside the vehicle.
- Read and follow all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 167, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.
- Hang clothes in such a way that they do not impair the driver's vision.
- The coat hooks must only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp edged objects in the pockets which may interfere with the side curtain airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a crash.
- Do not use coat hangers for hanging clothing on the coat hooks as this can interfere ▶

with proper deployment of the side curtain airbags in an accident.
– Do not hang heavy objects on the coat hooks, as they could cause personal injury in a sudden stop.

Note

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window heating wires.

Roof rack

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack

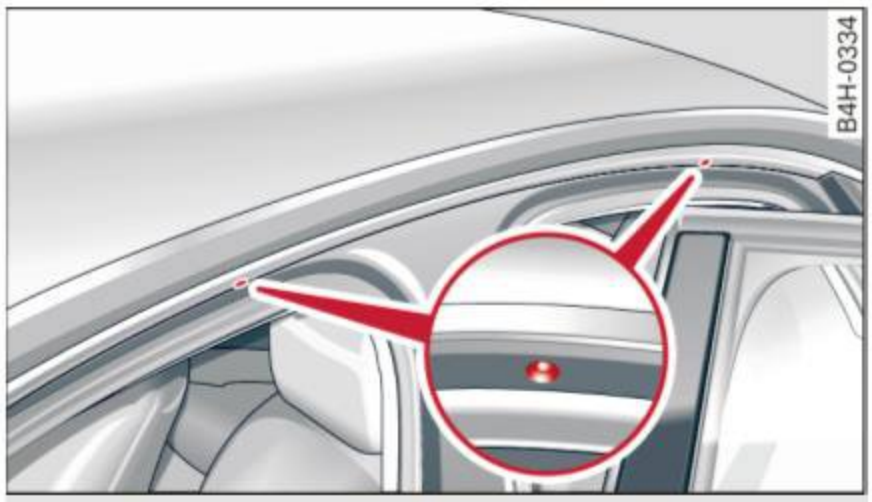

Fig. 65 Attachment points for the roof rack

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

– Only a specially designed roof rack may be used on your vehicle. These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments/carrier systems are necessary to transport luggage and sports equipment. We recommend roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program.
– When installing the roof rack, make sure that it is mounted only at the designated points on the roof ⇨ *fig. 65*.
– The permissible roof load for your vehicle is 220 lbs (100 kg). The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used. For the permitted axle load and the permitted total vehicle weight, refer to ⇨ *page 255*.

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– Using a roof rack system increases the risk of an accident, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. Adapt your driving and speed to the current conditions.

Note

Make sure that the luggage compartment lid and the sunroof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof when they are open.

For the sake of the environment

Your vehicle will require more fuel due to the increased wind resistance. So remove the roof rack after using it.

Luggage compartment

General information

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 134, Storing cargo correctly*.

Increasing the size of the luggage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately or together.

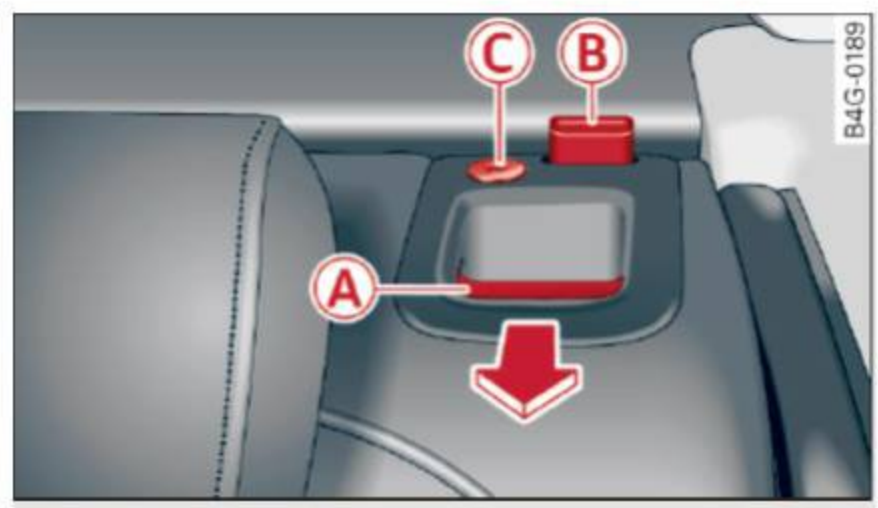

Fig. 66 Backrest: release lever, securing knob and lock*

Release handle on the backrest

- Pull the release lever Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 66* in the direction of the arrow to fold the backrest forward.

Folding the backrest back into the upright position

- Fold the backrest back up again until it latches and the red marking Ⓑ is no longer visible ⇨ ⚠.

You can lock the backrest when it is latched in place using the mechanical key Ⓒ ⇨ *fig. 66*. This prevents any access to the luggage compartment from the vehicle interior.

⚠ WARNING

- Be careful when folding the backrests forward! Not paying attention and not checking when folding the backrests can lead to pinching injuries.
- The backrest must be latched securely to ensure that the safety belt is protecting the center seating position.
- The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.

Note

- If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
- If the Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE)* is installed, move the rear head restraints down before folding the backrests forward ⇨ *page 52* to reduce the risk of damage.
- When folding the backrest forward, make sure the outer safety belts are in the belt guide recess so that they do not get pinched in the backrest lock and damaged. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.

Tie-downs

Applies to: vehicles with tie-downs

Fig. 67 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

- To secure objects, for example using the luggage compartment net, fold the tie-down retainer upward.

Luggage compartment net

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment net

The cargo net prevents small objects from sliding.

Fig. 68 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

- Attach the hooks for the luggage compartment net in the tie-downs.

⚠ WARNING

For strength reasons, only objects with a maximum weight of 10 lb (5 kg) should be secured in the luggage compartment net. Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Storage hooks

Applies to: vehicles with bag hooks

Fig. 69 Luggage compartment: storage hooks

You can also use the hooks to hang light purses, bags, etc.

WARNING

The hooks can hold a maximum weight of 6.6 lbs (3 kg). Heavier objects are not adequately secured. There is risk of personal injury.

Pass-through with ski bag

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and ski bag

Long objects, such as skis or snowboards, can be transported in the ski bag.*

Fig. 70 Backrest: pass-through cover

- To load the ski sack in the vehicle, fold the rear center armrest down.
- Fold the pass-through cover down ⇨ *fig. 70*.
- Push the packed bag* through the opening from the luggage compartment. The zipper must face toward the rear.
- Secure the bag ⇨ *page 59*.

Tips

You can also open the pass-through from the luggage compartment. Push the release button down and push the cover forward.

Securing the ski bag (5 seats*)

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through and ski bag

The ski bag must be secured*

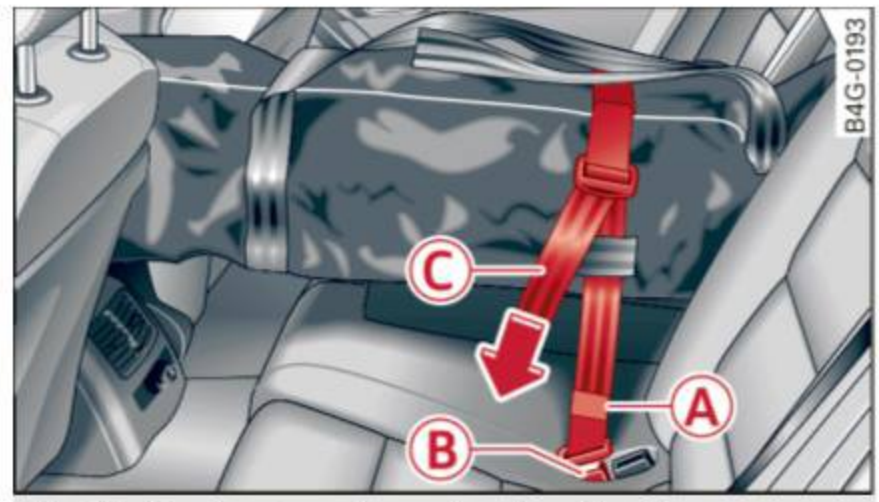

Fig. 71 Rear bench seat: securing the ski sack

- Stick the strap Ⓐ on the bag in the center safety belt Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 71*.
- Tighten and secure the strap Ⓒ.

WARNING

– The bag is only intended for transporting skis and other light objects. To reduce the risk of serious injuries, never transport heavy or sharp objects in the bag.
– After loading, the bag must be secured with the strap.
– Make sure that all objects that you are transporting in the pass-through are secure. They could slide around and increase the risk of injury when braking or during an accident.

Tips

– Only fold the bag up if it is dry.
– When transporting skis or snowboards, tighten the securing strap between the bindings.
– Lay skis in the bag with the points facing forward and snowboards and ski pole points facing the rear.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

The climate control system warms, cools and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and sunroof* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

In all heating mode functions, except for defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a sufficient temperature.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Key recognition

Applies to: vehicles with deluxe automatic climate control

The blower setting and air distribution are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that you are using.

Applies to: vehicles with 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar as quickly as possible with the correct use and function of the climate control system, especially with the defrosting and defogging function.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

- To save fuel, turn off cooling mode by pressing the A/C button. This will also reduce emissions.
- In vehicles with a diesel engine, you can switch the auto supplementary heater off in the Infotainment system.

Tips

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow or leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.

Automatic climate control

Applies to: vehicles with deluxe automatic climate control

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).

Fig. 72 Deluxe automatic climate control: controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. The dial adjusts the temperature and the blower. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

Adjusting the temperature

The temperature can be adjusted individually for the driver and front passenger using the dials ① and ③.

Adjusting the blower

Using the dial ②, you can manually adjust the amount of air generated by the blower to suit your preferences. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the blower control. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

FRONT Switching the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. ▶

The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 72 °F (22 °C).

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

Adjusting seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

Applies to: vehicles with 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control

We recommend pressing the AUTO button and setting the temperature to 72 °F (22 °C).

Fig. 73 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control: controls

Fig. 74 4-zone deluxe automatic climate control system: rear controls

Press the buttons to turn the functions on or off. Use the controls to adjust the temperature, the blower speed and the air distribution. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on. The front settings are shown in the climate control system display and in the Infotainment system display for a few seconds. The driver and front passenger settings can be adjusted separately.

The settings can also be adjusted in the rear ⇨ *fig. 74*.

OFF Switching the climate control system on/off

The OFF button switches the climate control system on or off. It also switches on when you press the control. Airflow from outside is blocked when the climate control system is switched off. The OFF button in the rear only switches the A/C system on/off in the rear of the vehicle.

A/C Switching cooling mode on/off

The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

Switching recirculation mode on/off

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. We recommend switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic ⇨ ⚠.

The AUTO button or FRONT button switches recirculation mode off.

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically.

If press and hold the button longer, 72 °F (22 °C) will be set.

Adjusting the temperature

Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. Outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

Adjusting the blower

You can adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting air distribution

You can manually select the vents where the air will flow. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

Adjusting seat heating*/seat ventilation*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating/seat ventilation on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating/seat ventilation off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

FRONT Switching the defroster on/off

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation ▶

mode switches off. The temperature should be set to approximately 72 °F (22 °C).

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

REAR Switching the rear window defogger on/off

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running. It switches off automatically after a few minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window heater from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than 2 seconds. This is stored until the ignition is switched off.

SYNC Synchronization

When synchronization is switched on, the settings for the driver's side are applied to the front passenger's side (except for seat heating/ventilation*). The settings in the rear are also synchronized. Synchronization switches off if the settings are adjusted on the front passenger's side or in the rear.

You can synchronize the settings in a row by pressing and holding a control. For example, to apply the settings for the front passenger's side to the driver's side, press and hold the control on the front passenger's side. The same applies to the rear.

Residual heat*

With the ignition turned off, you can activate the residual heat function by pressing the button ⇨ *fig. 73*. The residual heat from the coolant is used to heat the vehicle interior. The residual heat function switches off automatically after about 30 minutes.

Air vents

You can open or close the center and rear vents in the cockpit and the vents in the rear center console and door pillars using the ridged thumbwheels. The levers adjust the direction of the airflow from the vents.

WARNING

- You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time since no fresh air is drawn in. With the air-conditioning switched off, the windows can fog up, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To avoid damage to the heating elements in the seats, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy loads on a small area of the seat.

Basic settings

The climate control system basic settings are accessed in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **AC**.

Rear seat settings*

When this function is selected, all settings for the rear can be adjusted through the climate control system in the cockpit. The climate control system settings cannot be adjusted in the rear seat at the same time. This function switches off after a certain period of time or when one of the controls in the cockpit is pressed.

Automatic recirculation*

The sensitivity level of the automatic recirculation mode can be set at various levels from **Off** to **Sensitive**. Recirculation mode is controlled automatically. If the windows fog up, press the FRONT button.

Footwell temperature*

You can adjust the footwell temperature so that it is cooler or warmer.

Automatic auxiliary heater*

In vehicles with diesel engines*, the auxiliary heater helps to warm the vehicle interior more ▸

quickly. The auxiliary heating activates automatically when the when the automatic auxiliary heater function is activated.

Steering wheel heating

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The steering wheel rim can be heated.

Fig. 75 Steering wheel: steering wheel heating button

- Press the button to switch steering wheel heating on/off. The message **Steering wheel heating on/Steering wheel heating off** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The temperature is maintained at a constant level when steering wheel heating is switched on.

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key that is in use.

Driving

General information

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in, and the break-in distance should be 1,000 miles (1,500 km). Do not drive at speeds that will exceed 2/3 of the maximum permitted engine speed (RPM) for the first 600 miles (1,000 km), and avoid full acceleration during this period. You may gradually start increasing the RPM and the speed between 600 miles (1,000 km) and 1,000 miles (1,500 km).

During the first hours of use, the engine has a higher internal friction than later on when all moving parts have settled into place with each other.

How the vehicle is driven during the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) also affects the engine quality. Drive at moderate engine speeds after the initial break-in period, particularly when running a cold engine. This will reduce engine wear and improve the mileage.

Do not drive at too *low* of an engine speed (rpm). Shift down if the engine stops running "smoothly". Extremely high engine speeds are automatically reduced.

New tires

If your vehicle is running on new tires, drive particularly careful for the first 350 miles (500 kilometers) after fitting.

WARNING

New tires tend to be slippery and must also be "broken-in". Be sure to remember this during the first 350 miles (500 kilometers). Brake gently. Avoid following closely behind other vehicles or other situations that might require sudden, hard braking.

Avoid damaging the vehicle

When you are driving on poor roads, or over curbs, steep ramps, etc., make certain that low-lying parts such as spoilers and exhaust system parts do not bottom out and get damaged.

This is especially true for vehicles with low-slung chassis (sports chassis)* and fully loaded vehicles.

Warming up/cooling down

Applies to: S models

By warming up/cooling down the engine carefully, you can help reduce unnecessary strain on your vehicle when driving in a sporty style.

The engine speed is limited when the engine is cold - the full engine output is not available. When the engine is at operating temperature, the engine speed limitation moves to a higher RPM range. The tires also only reach their full road holding capability once they have warmed up.

Your vehicle also has an after-run cooling feature. However, cooling down is still important. The engine and the brakes as well as the exhaust system and the transmission become very hot when driving in a sporty style. Before you shut the vehicle off, you should cool down the vehicle by driving a few miles at low speeds with light acceleration.

Driving through water on roads

Note the following to reduce the risk of vehicle damage when driving through water, for example on flooded roads:

– The water must not be any higher than the bottom of the vehicle body.
– Do not drive faster than walking speed.

WARNING

After driving through water or mud, the effectiveness of the brakes may be reduced due to moisture on the brake rotors and brake pads. A few careful brake applications should dry off the brakes.

Note

– Vehicle components such as the engine, transmission, suspension or electrical ▶

system can be severely damaged by driving through water.
– Always switch the Start/Stop system* off when driving through water ⇨ *page 72*.

Tips

– Determine the depth before driving through water.
– Do not stop the vehicle, drive in reverse or switch the engine off when driving through water.
– Keep in mind that oncoming vehicles may create waves that raise the water level and make it too deep for your vehicle to drive through safely.
– Avoid driving through salt water, because this can cause corrosion.

Economical and environmentally-friendly driving

The amount of fuel consumption, the environmental impact and the wear to the engine, brakes and tires depends mostly on your driving style. With an anticipatory and economic driving style, fuel consumption can be reduced by approximately 10-15%. The following tips will help you conserve the environment and your money at the same time.

Anticipatory driving

A vehicle uses the most fuel when accelerating. When you drive with anticipation, you do not need to brake as often and so you accelerate less. When possible, let your vehicle coast with a **gear engaged**, for example, when you notice that the next traffic light is red. This produces an engine braking effect, which helps to protect the brakes and tires and reduces the emissions and fuel consumption to zero (fuel shut-off during deceleration).

Shift efficiently

An effective way to save fuel is to upshift *earlier*. Staying in a gear too long uses fuel unnecessarily.

Press down on the accelerator pedal slowly and avoid “kick-down”.

Avoid full acceleration

You should rarely travel at the maximum vehicle speed. High speeds cause a disproportionately high increase in fuel consumption, emissions and traffic noise. Slower driving saves fuel.

Reduce idling time

The Start-Stop system* helps to reduce the idling time automatically. In vehicles without the Start-Stop system*, it is efficient to switch the engine off when stopped at railroad crossings and long red lights. Stopping the engine for 30-40 seconds already saves more fuel than the amount of extra fuel needed to restart the engine.

It takes a very long time in idle to warm the engine up to operating temperature. Wear and emissions are especially high in the warm-up phase. Therefore, you should begin driving immediately after starting the engine. Avoid high RPMs while doing this.

Have maintenance performed regularly

By having maintenance performed regularly on your vehicle, you can help to reduce fuel consumption before you even start to drive. The maintenance condition of your vehicle not only affects traffic safety and long-term value but also impacts **fuel consumption**. A poorly maintained engine can lead to fuel consumption that is 10% higher than normal.

Avoid short trips

The engine and exhaust cleaning system must reach their optimal **operating temperature** to effectively reduce consumption and emissions.

A cold engine uses a disproportionately high amount of fuel. The engine reaches operating temperature and consumption normalizes only after approximately *2.5 miles* (4 km).

Check the tire pressure

To save fuel, make sure the tires are always inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ *page 220*. The fuel consumption can increase by 5% if the pressure is only 0.5 bar too low. Due to the increased rolling resistance, low tire pressures will also ▶

4G0012721BB

lead to greater tire **wear** and will affect driving behavior.

Do not drive on **winter tires** year-round, as this will consume up to 10% more fuel.

Eliminate unnecessary weight

Since every kilogram of extra **weight** increases fuel consumption, a quick inspection of the luggage compartment may be worth it to avoid unnecessary weight.

When not being used, a roof rack should be removed to decrease the wind resistance of the vehicle. You will save approximately 12% of your fuel when at speeds from 62-75 mph (100-120 km/h).

Save energy

The engine drives the generator, which generates electricity; the fuel consumption also increases with the demand for electricity. Therefore, switch electrical equipment off when you no longer need it. Examples of equipment that uses a lot of energy are air blowers at a high setting, the rear window defogger and seat heating*.

Note

Do not leave engine idling unattended after starting. If warning lights should come on to indicate improper operation, they would go unheeded. Extended idling also produces heat, which could result in overheating or other damage to the vehicle or other property.

Note

- Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.
- Do not alter or remove any component of the Emission Control System unless approved by the manufacturer.
- Do not alter or remove any device, such as heat shields, switches, ignition wires, valves, which are designed to protect your vehicle's Emission Control System and other important vehicle components.

Tips

The consumption estimates as published by ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION AGENCY (EPA) and Transport Canada may not correspond to your actual consumption on the road, which will vary depending upon vehicle load and speed, road and weather conditions, trip length, etc.

Steering

Manual steering wheel position adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position is adjustable up and down and forward and back.

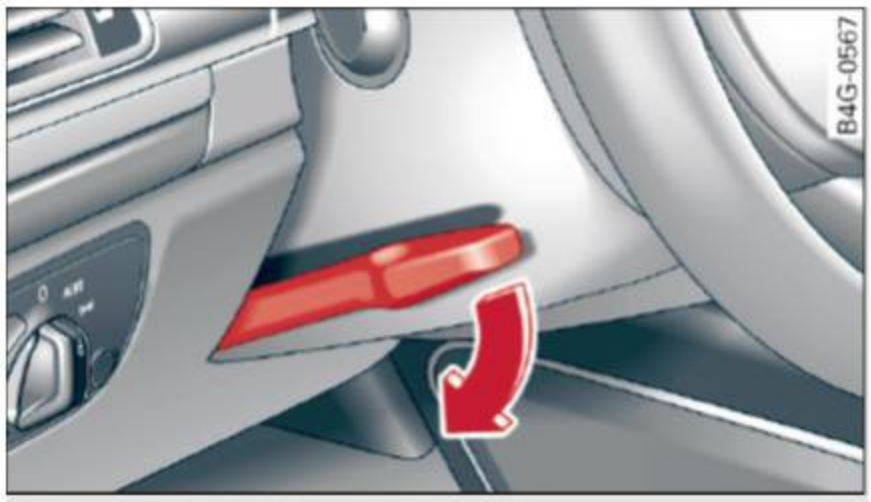

Fig. 76 Lever on the steering column

- Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow ⇨ ⚠.
- Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
- Push the lever against the steering column until it is secure.

WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.

- Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
- Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ▶

⇨ *page 129, fig. 140*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
– If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 in (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
– If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Power steering wheel position adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel position can be adjusted electrically up and down and forward and back.

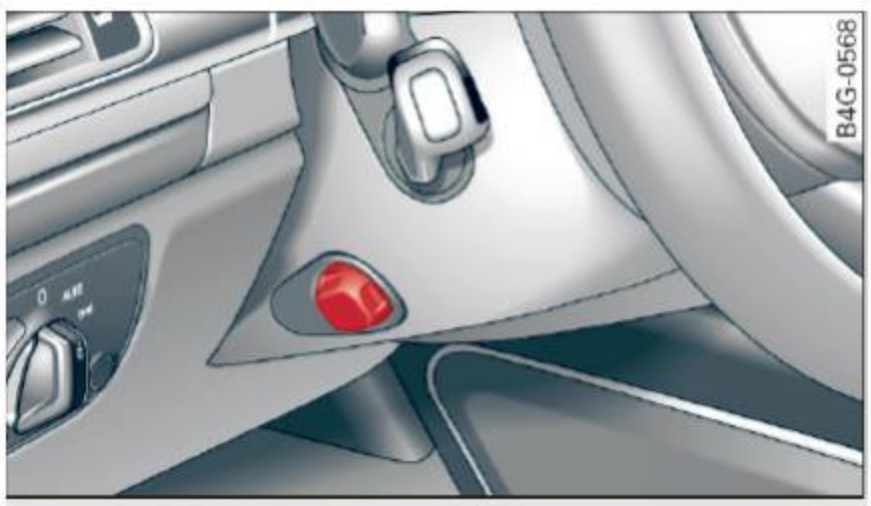

Fig. 77 Switch for adjusting the steering wheel position

▸ To adjust the height, press the switch up/down. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.
▸ To move the steering wheel forward or back, press the switch forward/back. The steering column will continue moving as long as you are pressing the switch.

The steering wheel can also be adjusted when the ignition is switched off.

In vehicles with memory function*, the steering column settings are stored together with the seat position.

WARNING

Improper use of steering wheel adjustment and improper seating position can cause serious personal injury.
– Adjust the steering wheel column only when the vehicle is not moving to prevent loss of vehicle control.
– Adjust the driver's seat or steering wheel so that there is a minimum of 10 in (25 cm) between your chest and the steering wheel ⇨ *page 129, fig. 140*. If you cannot maintain this minimum distance, the airbag system cannot protect you properly.
– If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 in (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Audi dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.
– If the steering wheel is aligned with your face, the supplemental driver's airbag cannot provide as much protection in an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel is aligned with your chest.
– Always hold the steering wheel with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag deploys.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag deploys.

Easy seat entry

Applies to: vehicles with power steering wheel adjustment

Easy seat entry makes it easier to enter and exit the vehicle by adjusting the steering column automatically.

- In the Infotainment system, select the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** > **Easy seat entry** > **On**.

When easy seat entry is switched on, the steering column goes back up into the park position when the ignition is switched off. After entering the vehicle, the steering column returns to the stored position once the ignition is switched on.

Starting and stopping the engine

Starting the engine

The START ENGINE STOP button switches the ignition on and starts the engine.

Fig. 78 Center console: START ENGINE STOP button

Starting the engine

- Press the brake pedal and move the selector lever into the P or N position ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines

- It is possible that there will be a slight delay when starting the engine in colder temperatures. Therefore, you must hold the brake pedal down until the engine starts. The indicator light turns on while the engine is preheating.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you would like to switch the ignition on without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- Press the START ENGINE STOP button **without** pressing the brake pedal.
- To switch the ignition off, press the button again. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

The prewarming runs automatically in diesel vehicles when the ignition is switched on.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine.

If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. Repeat the starting procedure.

Start/Stop system*

Read the information in ⇨ *page 72, Start-Stop system*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Note

Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not let the engine run while parked to warm up. Begin driving immediately. This reduces unnecessary emissions.

Tips

– Some noise after starting the engine is normal and is no cause for concern.
– If you leave the vehicle with the ignition switched on, the ignition will switch off after a certain amount of time. Make sure that electrical equipment such as the exterior lights are switched off.

Stopping the engine

- Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- Move the selector lever to the P or N position.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP ⇨ *page 70, fig. 78* button.

Steering lock[1)]

The steering locks when you turn the engine off using the START ENGINE STOP button and open the driver's door. The locked steering helps prevent vehicle theft.

Emergency off function*

If it is absolutely necessary, the engine can also be turned off while driving in the R or D/S selector lever position at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h). To stop the engine, press and hold the START ENGINE STOP button and also press the brake pedal.

WARNING

– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is not guaranteed. You may need to use more force when braking or steering. Because you cannot brake and steer as you usually would, this could lead to accidents and serious injuries.
– Always take the key with you whenever you leave your vehicle. Otherwise, the engine could be started or electrical equipment such as the power windows could be operated. This can lead to serious injury.
– For safety reasons, always park the vehicle with the selector lever in the P position. Otherwise, there is the risk that the vehicle could roll unintentionally.

Note

If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

After the engine has been switched off, the radiator fan can continue to run for up to 10 minutes - even with the ignition switched off. It can also switch on again after some time if the coolant temperature rises as the result of heat buildup or if the engine is already warm and the engine compartment is also heated by the sun's rays.

Messages

Turn off ignition before leaving car

This message appears and a warning tone sounds if you open the driver's door when the ignition is switched on.

Press brake pedal to start engine

This message appears if you do not press the brake pedal when starting the engine.

Key not in vehicle?

This indicator light turns on and this message appears if the ignition key was removed from the vehicle when the engine was running. If the ignition key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch on the ignition or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Shift to P, otherwise vehicle can roll away. Doors do not lock if lever is not in P.

This message appears for safety reasons if the transmission is not in the P position when you switch the ignition off. Move the selector lever to the P position. Otherwise the vehicle is not protected from rolling and it cannot be locked.

Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 72*. ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Turn off ignition before leaving vehicle. Battery is discharging

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on. Always switch off the ignition if you are leaving the vehicle. Also see ⇨ *page 74*.

Shift to P and turn off ignition before leaving car, otherwise vehicle can roll away

This message appears if the driver's door is opened while the ignition is switched on and the selector lever is not in the P position. Move the selector lever into the P position and switch the ignition off when you exit the vehicle. Otherwise the vehicle could roll. Also see ⇨ *page 74*.

Starting the engine when there is a malfunction

It may not be possible to start the engine under certain circumstances, for example if the battery in the vehicle key is drained, if interference is affected the key or if there is a system malfunction.

Fig. 79 Center console/remote control key: starting the engine if there is a malfunction

Requirement: the message **Key is not recognized. Hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual** must appear and the indicator light must turn on.

- Hold the remote control key in the location indicated as shown in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 79*.
- Press the brake pedal.
- Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

- Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

You can view the message again by pressing the START ENGINE STOP button.

Start-Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

Applies to: A6: the Start/Stop system activates automatically once the ignition is switched on.

Applies to: S6: the last Start/Stop system setting is restored when the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

– The driver's door must be closed.
– The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
– The hood must be closed.
– The vehicle must have driven faster than 2.5 mph (4 km/h) since the last time it stopped.
– A trailer must not be hitched to the vehicle.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 72*.

Tips

The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop [1].

[1] Market-specific

Stopping/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Fig. 80 Instrument cluster: engine switched off (stop phase)

- Brake the vehicle to a stop. The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop or if the vehicle is stationary [1]. Keep your foot on the brake pedal. The Ⓐ indicator light appears in the information line at the bottom of the instrument cluster display. The needle in the tachometer also moves into the **READY**[1] position.
- The engine starts again when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Additional information

The engine stops in the P, N and D selector lever positions.

If you select the R position during a stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift to P quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through R.

You can determine for yourself if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. As soon as you press the brake down harder, the engine will switch off.

Tips

- Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.
- The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button during a stop phase. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The standard Start/Stop mode can be canceled for various system-related reasons.

Engine does not switch off

Before and during each stop phase, the system checks if certain conditions have been met. If the indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display, the engine will not be stopped, for example in the following situations:

- The engine has not reached the minimum required temperature for Start/Stop mode.
- The interior temperature selected by the A/C system has not been reached.
- The outside temperature is extremely high/low.
- The windshield is being defrosted.
- The parking system* is be switched on.
- The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
- The steering wheel is turned at a sharp angle or is moving.
- After engaging the reverse gear.
- On sharp inclines.

Engine automatically restarts

The standard Start/Stop mode will be canceled during a stop phase in the following situations. The engine restarts without any action by the driver.

- The vehicle rolls, for example while on a slope.
- The interior temperature differs from the temperature selected in the A/C system.
- The windshield is being defrosted.
- The brake pedal is pressed several times in a row.

[1] Market-specific

– The vehicle battery charge level is too low.
– Power consumption is high.

The engine can turn off again when the conditions for Start-Stop mode are met.

Ignition is switched off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition will switch off **automatically** under the following conditions:

– The vehicle must have already been driven.
– The Start/Stop system has stopped the engine.
– The driver's door must be open.
– The driver's safety belt must be unbuckled.
– The brake pedal must not be pressed.
– The vehicle must be stationary.

In this case, the activated low beam is replaced by the parking light. The parking lights will switch off after approximately 30 minutes or when you lock the vehicle.

If the Start/Stop system has not turned off the engine or if you have switched the Start/Stop system off manually, the ignition will not be automatically switched off and the engine will continue to run ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of poisoning, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Tips

If you select the D or N selector lever position after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

Manually switching the Start/Stop system off/on

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.

Fig. 81 Center console: Start/Stop system button

▸ To switch the Start/Stop system off/on manually, press the [Ⓐ OFF] button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Start-stop system deactivated: Please restart engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started with the [START ENGINE STOP] button.

Start-stop system: System fault! Currently unavailable

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Electromechanical parking brake

Fig. 82 Center console: parking brake

Your vehicle is equipped with an electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *fig. 82*. The parking brake is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling unintentionally and replaces the hand brake.

Setting/manually releasing the parking brake

- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake. The LED in the switch illuminates. The PARK (USA models)/Ⓟ (Canada models) indicator light also turns on in the instrument cluster display.
- To release the parking brake manually, press the brake or accelerator pedal while the ignition is switched on and press the Ⓟ switch at the same time. The LED in the button and the indicator light in the display turn off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed, the driver's safety belt must be latched and the parking brake must be set.

- To start driving and release the parking brake automatically, press the accelerator pedal as usual.

In addition to releasing the parking brake automatically, other convenience and safety functions are available when you start driving ⇨ *page 76, Starting from a stop*.

Preventing the automatic parking brake release

The vehicle could begin rolling unintentionally, depending on the hill or if towing a trailer.

- To prevent the parking brake from releasing automatically, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch and press the accelerator pedal. The parking brake remains set and prevents the vehicle from rolling backward.
- You can release the Ⓟ switch again once you are sure that you are giving enough driving force to the wheels by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Emergency braking function

You can use the emergency braking function in an emergency situation, or if the standard brake operation malfunctions or is disabled.

- Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch.
- As soon as you release the Ⓟ switch or accelerate, the braking stops.

Pulling and holding the Ⓟ switch while driving the vehicle activates the emergency braking function. The vehicle is braked at all four wheels by activating the hydraulic brake system. The braking effect is similar to heavy braking ⇨ ⚠.

To reduce the risk of activating the emergency braking by mistake, a warning tone (buzzer) sounds when the Ⓟ switch is pulled. Emergency braking stops as soon as the Ⓟ switch is released or the accelerator pedal is pressed.

Parking

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- Pull the Ⓟ switch to set the parking brake.
- Place the selector lever in the P position.
- Turn the engine off ⇨ ⚠.
- Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.

⚠ WARNING

– Do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently if a gear is selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
– Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, when the normal brake pedal has failed or the brake pedal is obstructed.

During emergency braking, your vehicle will brake similar to heavy braking. ESC and the associated components (ABS, ASR, EDL) cannot overcome the laws of physics. In corners and when road or weather conditions are bad, a full brake application can cause the vehicle to skid or the rear end to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.
- If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake if it is released. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by placing the selector lever in the P position. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving your vehicle, even for a short period of time. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine, release the parking brake or operate electrical equipment such as power windows, which increases the risk of an accident.
- No one should remain in the vehicle when it is locked - especially children. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Tips

When stopping at a traffic signal or stopping in city traffic, you can set the parking brake manually. The vehicle does not have to be held with the brake pedal. The parking brake eliminates the tendency to creep when a selector lever position is engaged. As soon as you press the accelerator pedal, the parking brake releases automatically and your vehicle starts to move ⇨ *page 76*.

Tips

- Occasional noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
- The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.
- If there is a power failure, the parking brake will not set if it is released, and it will not release if it is set ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Starting from a stop

Various convenience and safety functions may be available when the vehicle begins driving, depending on vehicle equipment.

Starting on hills with the parking brake set

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the driver's safety belt must be fastened.

▸ To start driving comfortably when on a hill, set the parking brake and begin driving as usual. The braking force of the parking brake does not release automatically until the wheels build up enough driving force.

Starting on hills with hill hold assist

Hill hold assist makes it easier to start on hills.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the engine must be running.

▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds. The vehicle must be in an uphill direction of travel.

After releasing the brake pedal, the braking power is maintained for a brief moment ⇨ ⚠ to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when starting. During this time, you can easily begin to move your vehicle.

WARNING

- If you do not begin driving immediately or the engine stalls after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
- The intelligent technology of hill hold assist cannot overcome the limitations imposed by natural physical laws. The increased comfort offered by hill hold assist should not cause you to take safety risks.

▸

- Hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle in place on all hills (for example, if the ground is slippery or icy).
- To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission is controlled electronically. The transmission shifts up or down automatically depending on which drive program is selected.

When a **moderate driving style** is used, the transmission selects the most economical driving mode. The transmission upshifts at a lower RPM and downshifts at a higher RPM to improve fuel efficiency.

The transmission switches to a sporty mode after a kick-down or when the driver uses a **sporty driving style** characterized by quick accelerator pedal movements, heavy acceleration, frequent changes in speed and traveling at the maximum speed.

If desired, the driver can also select the gears *manually* **(tiptronic mode)** ⇨ *page 80*.

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission

The S tronic is a dual-clutch transmission. Power is transferred using two clutches that work independently from one another. They replace the torque converter used in conventional automatic transmissions and allow the vehicle to accelerate without a noticeable interruption in traction.

Applies to: vehicles with a tiptronic transmission

Power is transferred using a torque converter.

Selector lever positions

Fig. 83 Instrument cluster: selector lever positions

The selector lever position that is engaged is shown in the instrument cluster display.

P - Park

This selector lever position prevents the vehicle from rolling. You can only shift into Park when the vehicle is *stationary* ⇨ ⚠.

To shift in and out of the P selector lever position, press the interlock button in the selector lever *while* pressing the brake pedal. This only works when the ignition is turned on.

R – Reverse

Only shift into reverse gear when the vehicle is *stationary* and the engine is running at idle speed ⇨ ⚠.

To select the R selector lever position, press the interlock button *while* pressing the brake pedal at the same time. The back-up lights switch on in the R position if the ignition is switched on.

N - Neutral

The transmission is in idle in this position ⇨ ⚠.

D/S - Normal position for driving forward

In the D/S selector lever position, the transmission can be operated either in the normal D mode or in the S sport mode. To select the S sport mode, pull the selector lever back briefly. Pulling the lever back again will select the normal D mode. The instrument cluster display shows the selected driving mode. ▶

In the **normal mode** D, the transmission automatically selects the suitable gear ratio. It depends on engine load, vehicle speed and driving style.

Select the **sport mode** S for sporty driving. The vehicle makes full use of the engine's power. Shifting is more noticeable when accelerating.

To move from selector lever position N to D, you must press the brake pedal and the vehicle must be traveling less than 1 mph (2 km/h) or be stationary ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never select R or P while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except P) when the engine is running. Otherwise, this increases the risk of an accident.
- Do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is stopped if a gear is engaged. Otherwise the vehicle will start to move immediately, even if the parking brake is set. This could result in a crash.
- To decrease the risk of an accident, the selector lever must be in the P position and the parking brake must be set before opening the hood and working on a running engine. Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ *page 198, Working in the engine compartment*.

ⓘ Tips

- Drive select: sporty shifting characteristics can be selected using the **Dynamic** driving mode. S will appear in the instrument cluster display instead of D.
- If you accidentally select N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait for the engine to slow down to idle before selecting D/S.
- If there is a power failure, the selector lever will not move out of the P position. The emergency release can be used if this happens ⇨ *page 82*.

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock prevents you from selecting a gear accidentally, causing the vehicle to roll.

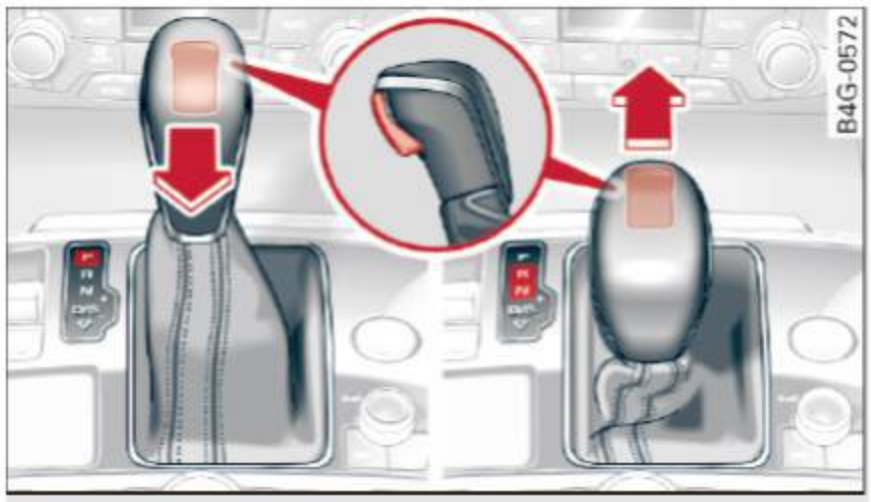

Fig. 84 Selector lever lock

To release the selector lever lock:

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the brake pedal *while* pressing the interlock button.

Automatic shift lock (ASL)

The selector lever is locked in the P and N positions when the ignition is switched on. The remove it from these positions, the driver must press the brake pedal and press the lock button at the same time. The following message appears in the instrument cluster display when the selector lever is in the P or N position to remind the driver:

Brake pedal must be applied to shift from P

The automatic shift lock only functions when the vehicle is stationary or at speeds below 1 mph (2 km/h). At higher speeds, the lock is automatically deactivated in the N position.

The selector lever is not locked when shifting quickly through N, for example from R to D. This makes it possible to free the vehicle when it is stuck by "rocking" it. The selector lever lock engages if the lever stays in the N position longer ▸

than 2 seconds when the brake pedal is not pressed.

Interlock button

The interlock button in the selector lever handle prevents you from moving the selector lever inadvertently while in some selector lever positions. The positions that require the interlock button to be pressed are marked in color in the illustration ⇨ *fig. 84*.

Driving tips

Starting the engine

- The selector lever must be in the P or the N position.

Starting from a stop

- Press and hold the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the lock button in the selector lever handle, select the desired selector lever position such as D/S and release the lock button.
- Wait a moment until the transmission shifts. You will notice a slight movement when the gear engages.
- Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal ⇨ ⚠.

Stopping temporarily

- Keep the vehicle stationary using the braking pedal, for example at traffic lights.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
- To prevent the vehicle from rolling when you start driving, set the parking brake when stopping on steep inclines ⇨ ⚠.
- The parking brake will release automatically and the vehicle will start moving once you press the accelerator pedal.

Stopping/parking

If the selector lever is not in the P position when you open the driver's door, the vehicle could roll. The message **Transmission: selector lever in drive position!** appears. A warning tone will also sound.

- Press and hold the brake pedal ⇨ ⚠.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the P selector lever position.

Under certain circumstances, such as driving in the mountains, it may be useful to switch temporarily to the manual shift program in order to manually adjust the gears to the driving conditions ⇨ *page 80*.

On inclines, activate the parking brake first and then move the selector lever to the P position ⇨ *page 75*. This prevents the locking mechanism from being loaded too heavily and will make it easier to move the selector lever out of the P position.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.
- Never leave your vehicle with the engine running while in gear.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal when changing the selector lever position while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.
- Please note that a small amount of power is transmitted if the vehicle is stopped temporarily while in the D/S or R selector lever position. To reduce the risk of an accident, you must continue pressing firmly on the brake pedal while the vehicle is stopped so that it does not roll.
- Never engage the R or P selector level positions while driving. It could cause a crash.
- Before driving down a steep slope, reduce your speed and shift into a lower gear with "tiptronic".
- Do not ride the brakes or press the brake pedal too often or too long when driving downhill. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.
- If you must stop on an incline, always hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake or parking brake to prevent it from rolling back.

– Never hold the vehicle on an incline with a slipping clutch. The clutch opens automatically when it becomes too hot from the overload. The indicator light turns on and a message appears ⇨ *page 81* when the clutch is overloaded.

Note

– When stopping on an incline, do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing the accelerator pedal while a driving gear is selected. This can cause the transmission to overheat and can damage it. Set the parking brake or press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
– Allowing the vehicle to roll when the engine is stopped will damage the transmission because it is not lubricated .

Tips

For safety reasons, the parking brake is released automatically only when the driver's safety belt is fastened.

Hill descent control

The hill descent control system assists the driver when driving down hills.

Hill descent control is activated when the selector lever is in the D or S position and you press the brake pedal. The transmission automatically selects a gear that is suitable for the hill. Hill descent control tries to maintain the speed achieved at the time of braking, within physical and technical limitations. If may still be necessary to adjust the speed with the brake pedal.

Hill descent control switches off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.

On vehicles with a cruise control system* ⇨ *page 86*, hill descent control is also activated when the speed is set.

WARNING

Hill descent control cannot overcome physical limitations, so it may not be able to maintain a constant speed under all conditions. Always be ready to apply the brakes.

Shifting manually (tiptronic mode)

The tiptronic mode allows the driver to shift the gears manually.

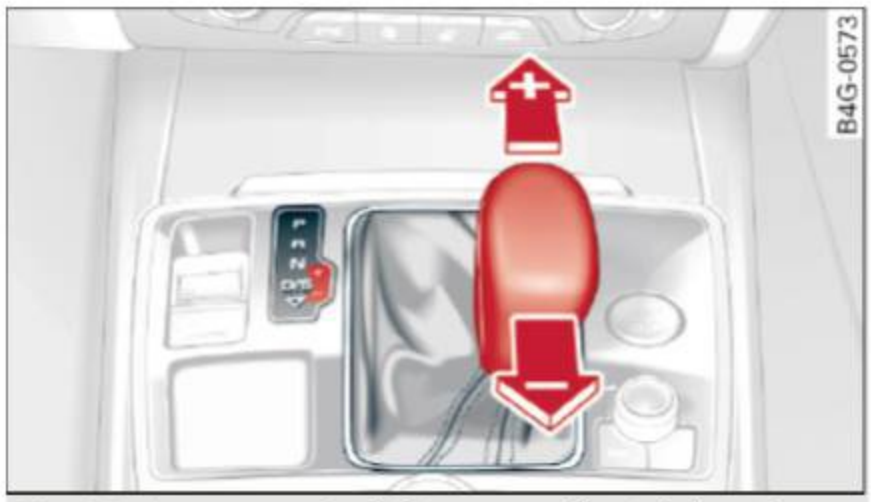

Fig. 85 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever

Fig. 86 Steering wheel: manual shifting with the shift paddles*

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into tiptronic mode while stationary and while driving.

▸ To shift into tiptronic mode, push the selector lever from the D/S setting to the right. As soon as the transmission switches over, the **M** selector lever position will appear in the instrument cluster display.
▸ To shift up a gear, tap the selector lever forward ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 85*.
▸ To shift down a gear, tap the selector lever back ⊖.

Shifting with the shift paddles*

You can operate the shift paddles in the D/S or **M** selector lever positions. ▸

- To shift up one gear, tap the shift paddle ⊕ ⇨ *fig. 86*.
- To shift down one gear, tap the ⊖ shift paddle.

The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.

The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.

Kick-down

Kick-down enables maximum acceleration.

When you press the accelerator pedal down beyond the resistance point, the automatic transmission downshifts into a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed and engine RPM. It shifts up into the next higher gear once the maximum specified engine RPM is reached.

WARNING

Please note that the wheels could spin on slick or slippery roads when kick-down is active.

Launch control program

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic

The launch control program provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

Requirement: the engine must be at operating temperature and the steering wheel must not be turned.

- Deactivate the Start/Stop system* ⇨ *page 74*. The LED in the Ⓐ button turns on.
- Switch the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) sport mode on ⇨ *page 121*. The indicator light turns on.
- Pull the selector lever back out of the D/S position briefly to select the S position or select the DYNAMIC driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 106*.
- Press the brake pedal firmly with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
- At the same time, press the gas pedal all the way down with your right foot until the engine reaches and stays at a high RPM level.
- Remove your foot from the brake pedal within five seconds ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Always adapt your driving to the traffic flow.
– Only use the Launch control program when road and traffic conditions allow it and other drivers will not be endangered or bothered by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration.
– Please note that the drive wheels can spin and the vehicle can break away when sport mode is switched on, especially when the road is slippery.
– Once the vehicle has started moving, press the OFF button briefly to turn the sport mode off.

Tips

– The transmission temperature may increase significantly after using the launch control program. If that happens, the program may not be available for a few minutes. It will be available again after a cool-down period.
– When accelerating using the launch control program, all vehicle parts are subject to heavy loads. This can lead to increased wear.

Transmission malfunction

Transmission: please press brake pedal and select gear again

Press the brake pedal and select the desired selector lever position again. You can then continue driving.

Transmission overheating: Please drive conservatively.

The transmission temperature has increased significantly due to the sporty driving manner. Drive in a less sporty manner until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light switches of. ▶

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: You can continue driving with limited functionality

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission

Transmission malfunction: No reverse gear. You can continue driving

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or will no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission malfunction: Stop vehicle and shift to park.

Do not continue driving. Select the P selector lever position and see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Note

If the transmission has switched to emergency mode, drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Selector lever emergency release

If the vehicle's power supply fails, the selector lever can be released in an emergency.

Fig. 87 Front center console: emergency release for the selector lever

- To reach the emergency release mechanism, remove the ashtray insert*.
- Loosen and remove the small cap in the ashtray mount ⇨ *fig. 87*.
- You now have access to a pin. Using a screwdriver or similar object, press the pin down and hold it in that position.
- Press the release button in the selector lever and move it into the N position.

Only move the selector lever out of the P position when the ignition is switched on. If the vehicle must be pushed or towed due to a power failure (for example, the vehicle battery is drained), the selector lever must first be moved to the N position using the emergency release mechanism.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your Audi was designed primarily for passenger transportation.

If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that the additional load will affect durability, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For this reason, always follow the operating and driving instructions provided and use common sense.

Note

If you are going to tow a trailer, you must activate the trailer operation mode ⇨ *page 83, Operating instructions*.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and must be mounted securely on the vehicle's chassis at a *technically sound* location. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed in such a way that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. No modifications should be made to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind ⇨ ⚠.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer is equipped with a braking system, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations.

The trailer hydraulic brake system must not be directly connected to the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations. Be sure to check with your Audi dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you *must* install extended mirrors. It is important that you *always* have clear vision to the rear.

WARNING

After removing the trailer hitch, do not store it in your vehicle. In case of sudden braking, the hitch could fly forward and injure you or your passengers.

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

A trailer for your vehicle is limited to a typical class 1 or class 2 trailer.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to prevent it from shifting forward, backward or sideways.

Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in Driving instructions on page 85*.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the cooling system's performance is up to the additional load. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid. ▶

4G0012721BB

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the tire pressure listed under "Full load" on the label ⇨ *page 220*. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

Check to make sure both vehicle and trailer lights are working properly.

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to permit turning corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road when you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping in case of separation from the hitch.

Adjusting the Audi drive select

Make sure the vehicle is on a level surface **before** hitching up the trailer and **before** adjusting the tongue weight. The vehicle must be in **auto** or **comfort** driving mode and not raised ⇨ *page 104*, ⇨ ⓘ.

Make sure that the vehicle is lowered. In Infotainment, select: CAR function button > **Lower** control button.

If you must drive under poor road conditions, you can raise the vehicle **after** coupling the trailer or **after** adjusting the tongue weight ⇨ *page 106*.

Note

- Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.
- Always select **auto** or **comfort** mode. Otherwise, the tongue load specified for your vehicle will no longer be applicable.

Driving instructions

Driving with a trailer always requires extra care and consideration.

Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an empty car results in a highly unstable distribution of weight. If this cannot be avoided, drive at very low speeds only to avoid the risk of losing steering control.

A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible, while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.

Speed

The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed. Reduce your speed even more if load, weather or wind conditions are unfavorable - particularly when going downhill.

Reduce vehicle speed **immediately** if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying. **Do not try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**

Observe speed limits. In some areas, speeds for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.

Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, shift into a lower gear to use the engine braking effect to slow the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.

Air suspension*

When driving with a trailer, activate the trailer mode of the air suspension. Switch the air suspension trailer mode on when you are towing a trailer. This will limit the regulation by the air suspension while driving. Select in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Air susp.: towing** > **On**. ▶

Coolant temperature

The coolant temperature gauge ⇨ *page 9* must be observed carefully. The coolant temperature can increase if you drive on long inclines in a low gear at high engine speeds. Reduce your speed immediately if the LEDs in the top part of the display turn on.

For more information about indicator lights, refer to ⇨ *page 14*.

WARNING

Anyone not properly restrained in a moving vehicle is at a much greater risk in an accident. Never let anyone ride in your car who is not properly wearing the restraints provided by Audi.

Trailer towing information

Important to know

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and different weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic. Keep practicing until you have become completely familiar with the way your vehicle-trailer combination behaves and responds.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Backing up with a trailer generally requires steering action opposite to that when backing up your vehicle without a trailer.

Maintain a greater distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop. To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Tips

– Do not tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
– If you tow a trailer, your Audi may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load ⇨ *page 259*.

Parking on a slope

Do not park on a slope with a trailer. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

When parking:

- Apply the foot brake.
- Have someone place chocks under both the vehicle and the trailer wheels.
- With chocks in place, slowly release the brakes until the wheel chocks absorb the load.
- Turn the wheels towards the curb.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Select the P selector lever position.

When restarting after parking:

- Apply the foot brake.
- Start the engine.
- Select the D/S selector lever position.
- Release the parking brake and slowly pull out and away from the wheel chocks.
- Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel chocks.

Tips

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may have to use more force later to move the lever out of the P position.

4G0012721BB

Assist

Speed warning system

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay under a specified maximum speed.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly.

The (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light and a message appear in the instrument cluster display at the same time. The / indicator light and the message turn off if the speed falls back below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Setting the warning threshold

The warning threshold is set in the Infotainment system.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning**.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Cruise control system

Switching on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system makes it possible to drive at a constant speed starting at 20 mph (30 km/h).

Fig. 88 Operating lever: cruise control system

- To switch the cruise control on, pull the lever into position 1 ⇨ *fig. 88*.
- Drive at the speed to be maintained.
- To store the speed, press the button A.

The stored speed and the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light are displayed in the instrument cluster.

This information is also shown briefly in the Head-up display*.

The speed is maintained by modifying engine power or through an active brake intervention.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to the traffic around you when the cruise control system is in operation. You are always responsible for your speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
– For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits or in construction zones.

– Please note that unconsciously "resting" your foot on the accelerator pedal prevents the cruise control from braking. This is because pressing the accelerator pedal overrides the cruise control system.
– If a brake system malfunction such as overheating occurs when the cruise control system is switched on, the braking function in the system may be switched off. The rest of the cruise control system functions remain active as long as the CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light is on.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Changing speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or decrease the speed in increments, tap the lever toward ⊕/⊖ ⇨ *page 86, fig. 88*.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, hold the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction until the desired speed is displayed.

You can also press the accelerator pedal down to increase your speed, for example if you want to pass someone. The speed you set earlier will resume as soon as you release the accelerator pedal.

However, if you exceed your saved speed by 5 mph (10 km/h) for longer than 6 minutes, the cruise control system turns off temporarily.

The green CRUISE (USA models) / (Canada models) indicator light in the speedometer turns off and the stored speed is maintained.

Preselecting the speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can pre-select your desired speed when the vehicle is stationary.

- Switch the ignition on.
- Pull the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 86, fig. 88*.
- To increase or decrease the speed, tap the lever toward ⊕/⊖.
- To store the speed displayed, release the lever.

This function makes it possible, for example, to save the speed you want before driving on the highway. Once on the highway, activate the cruise control by pulling the lever toward ①.

Switching off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

Temporary deactivation

- Press the brake pedal, or
- Press the lever into position ② (not clicked into place) ⇨ *page 86, fig. 88*, or
- Drive for longer than 5 minutes faster than 5 mph (10 km/h) above the stored speed.

Switching off completely

- Press the lever into position ② (clicked into place), or
- Switch the ignition off.

The speed you stored will be maintained if the cruise control has been switched off temporarily. To resume the stored speed, release the brake pedal and pull the lever to position ①.

Switching the ignition off will erase the stored speed.

WARNING

You should only resume the stored speed if it is not too high for existing traffic conditions. Otherwise you can increase the risk of an accident.

Audi adaptive cruise control

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

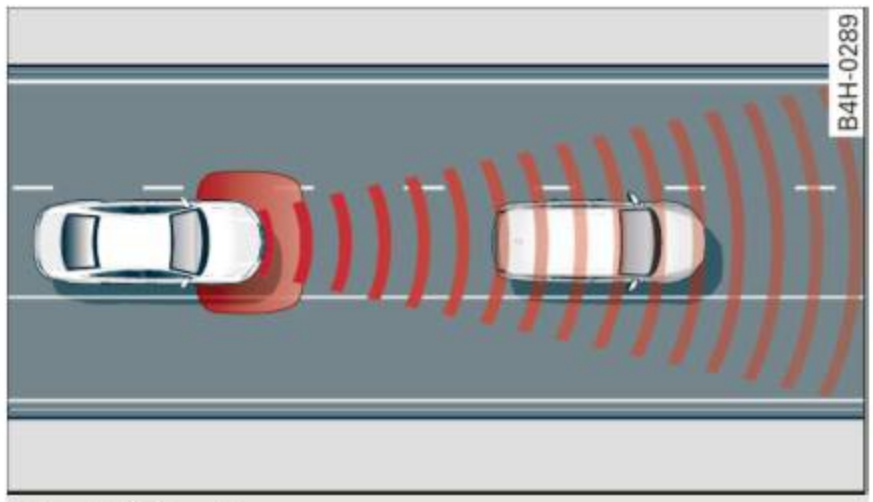

Fig. 89 Detection range

The adaptive cruise control system is a combination of speed and distance regulation. It assists the driver by both regulating the speed and maintaining a distance to the vehicle driving ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects and object ahead, adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle. This makes driving more comfortable both on long stretches of highway and in stop-and-go traffic.

What can adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control system uses video, radar and ultrasound. Objects driving ahead can be recognized up to 650 feet (200 m) away.

On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching an object ahead, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. As soon as the system does not detect an object ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates up to the stored speed.

In stop-and-go traffic, adaptive cruise control can brake until the vehicle is stationary and then begin driving again under certain conditions ⇨ *page 91*.

Audi braking guard can warn you about an impending collision and initiate braking maneuvers ⇨ *page 93*.

Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 90, Switching on/off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 92* or change the speed ⇨ *page 91* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the object moving ahead and set the driving mode of the adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 92*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Fig. 90 Front of the vehicle: sensors and video camera

The areas that contain the radar and ultrasonic sensors and the video camera ⇨ *fig. 90* must not be covered by stickers, deposits or other objects because they can interfere with the function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 231*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard is limited under some conditions.

- Objects can only be detected when they are within the sensor range ⇨ *page 88, fig. 89*.
- The system has a limited ability to detect objects that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
- Objects that are difficult to detect such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or an overhanging load are detected late or not detected at all.
- When driving through curves ⇨ *page 89*. ▶

– With stationary objects ⇨ page 90.

WARNING

Always pay attention to traffic when adaptive cruise control is switched on and braking guard is active. As the driver, you are still responsible for starting and for maintaining speed and distance to other objects. Braking guard is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions increases the risk of an accident.
– Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
– The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
– When approaching stationary objects such as stopped traffic, adaptive cruise control will not respond and braking guard will have limited function.
– The adaptive cruise control system and braking guard do not react to people, animals, objects crossing the road or oncoming objects.
– The function of the radar sensors can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.

WARNING

– Improper use of adaptive cruise control can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injury.
– Never let the comfort and convenience that adaptive cruise control and braking guard offer distract you from the need to be alert to traffic conditions and the need to remain in full control of your vehicle at all times,
– Always remember that the adaptive cruise control and braking guard have limits – they will not slow the vehicle down or maintain the set distance when you drive towards an obstacle or something on or near the road that is not moving, such as vehicles stopped in a traffic jam, a stalled or disabled vehicle. If registered by the radar sensors, vehicles or obstacles that are not moving can trigger a collision warning and if confirmed by the video camera, an acute collision warning.
– Never follow a vehicle so closely that you cannot stop your vehicle safely. The adaptive cruise control cannot slow or brake the vehicle safely when you follow another vehicle too closely. Always remember that the automatic braking function cannot bring the vehicle to a sudden or emergency stop under these conditions.
– To prevent unintended operation, always switch ACC off when it is not being used.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. That could affect the adaptive cruise control system and braking guard. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

In curves

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

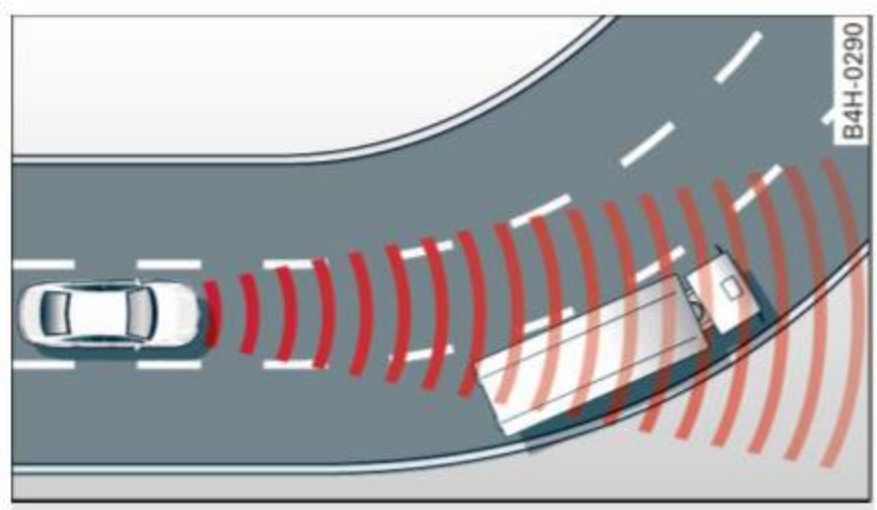

Fig. 91 Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 91* and out of a curve, the adaptive cruise control may react to an object in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can prevent that by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

Stationary objects

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

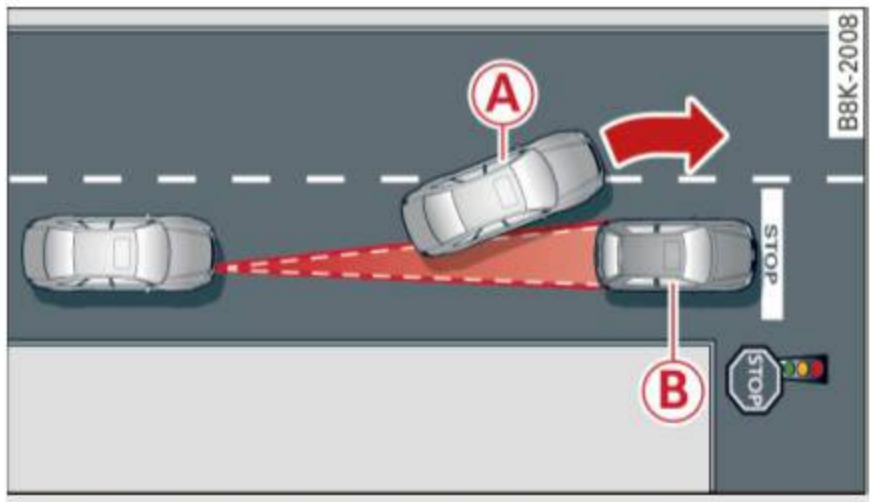

Fig. 92 Example: object changing lanes and stationary object

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to objects that are moving or that the system has already detected as moving. For example, it can react when a vehicle that has already been detected Ⓐ turns or changes lanes, but adaptive cruise control does not react to a stationary vehicle Ⓑ.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

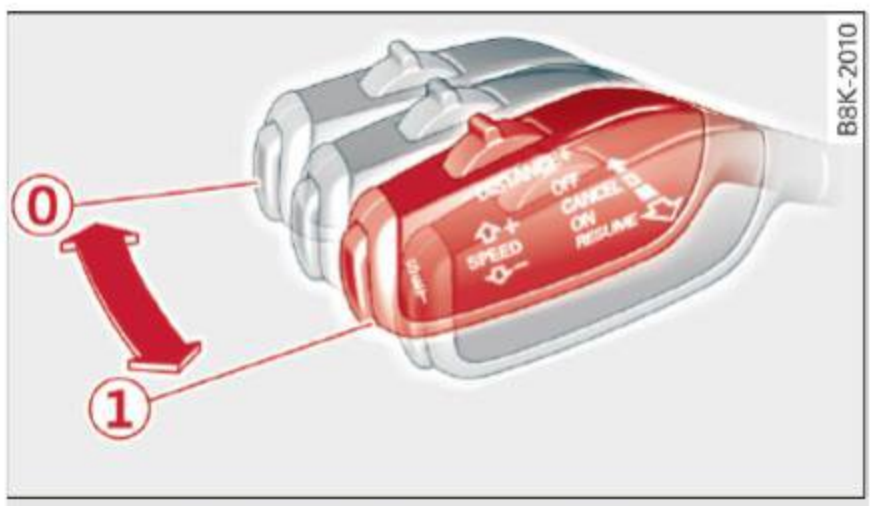

Fig. 93 Operating lever: switching on and off

Fig. 94 Instrument cluster: adaptive cruise control

You can set any speed between 20 mph (30 km/h) and 95 mph (150 km/h).

Indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current situation and setting.

An additional indicator appears in the Head-up display*.

Switching adaptive cruise control on

- Pull the lever toward you into position ① ⇨ *fig. 93*. **ACC: standby** appears in the display.

Saving the speed and activating regulation

- To save the current speed, press the SET ⇨ *fig. 93* button. The stored speed is shown in the speedometer in the LED line Ⓐ and appears briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *fig. 94*.
- To activate the regulation while stationary, also press the brake pedal.

Switching adaptive cruise control off

- Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place. The message **ACC: off** appears.

Ⓑ Indicator lights

- adaptive cruise control is switched on. No objects are detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

- An object ahead was detected. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the object ahead and accelerates/brakes automatically.

- adaptive cruise control is switched on. An object ahead was detected. Your vehicle remains stopped and will not start driving automatically. ▶

- The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to an object ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 93, Request for driver intervention*.

Ⓒ Instrument cluster display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the instrument cluster display, you can call it up using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 21*.

Based on the graphics in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to the object ahead and what that distance is.

No vehicle - No object ahead was detected.

White vehicle - An object ahead was detected.

Red vehicle - Request for driver intervention ⇨ *page 93*.

Both **arrows** on the **scale** Ⓒ indicate the distance to the object ahead. No arrow appears when the vehicle is on an open road and there is no object ahead. If an object is detected ahead, the arrow moves on the scale.

The green zone on the scale indicates the store distance. For information on changing the distance, refer to ⇨ *page 92*. If the distance selected is exceeded or not reached, the arrow moves into the red zone on the scale.

WARNING

If you press the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle accelerates automatically up to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

– If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control system off, the set speed is erased for safety reasons.
– The electronic stabilization control (ESC) and the anti-slip-regulation (ASR) are automatically switched on when the adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Fig. 95 Operating lever: changing the speed

- To increase or reduce the speed in increments, **tap** the lever up or down.
- To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever up or down until the red LED Ⓐ reaches the desired speed ⇨ *page 90, fig. 94*.

After each change, the new stored speed appears briefly in the information line ⇨ *page 90, fig. 94* Ⓓ.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

The adaptive cruise control system also assists you in stop-and-go traffic.

Stopping automatically

If an object ahead stops, your vehicle will brake and stay at a stop, within the limits of the system. The Start/Stop system* can be used as usual.

Driving manually

- Tap the accelerator pedal, or
- pull the lever toward you into position ②.

Tips

If an obstacle is detected when your vehicle starts moving, the driver intervention request appears ⇨ *page 93*. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also happen in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

Interrupting cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

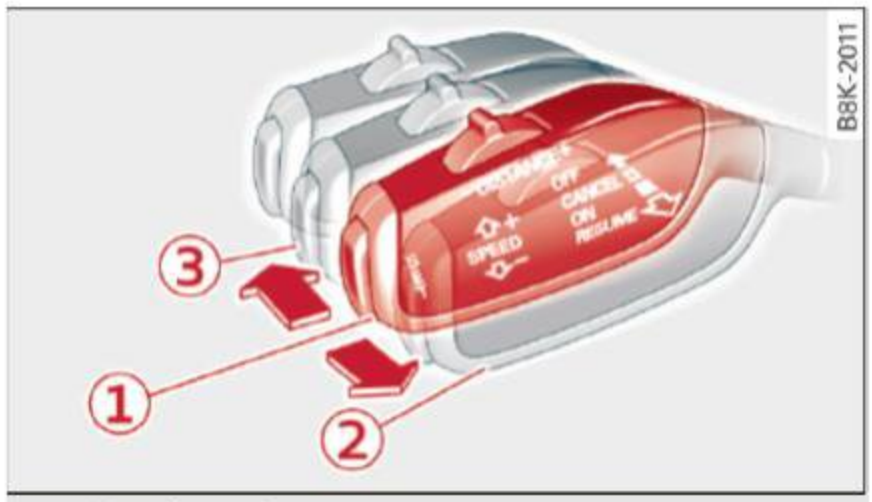

Fig. 96 Selector lever

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on.

Overriding cruise control

- To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you into position ② and hold it there. The message **ACC: override** appears. Or
- press the accelerator pedal.
- To resume cruise control, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Canceling cruise control while driving

- Move the lever into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears. Or
- press the brake pedal.
- To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position ②.

Canceling cruise control when stopped

- Push the lever away from you into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears.
- To resume cruise control, press the brake pedal and pull the lever toward you into position ②.

> **WARNING**
>
> It is dangerous to activate cruise control and resume the stored speed when the current road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. This increases the risk of an accident.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

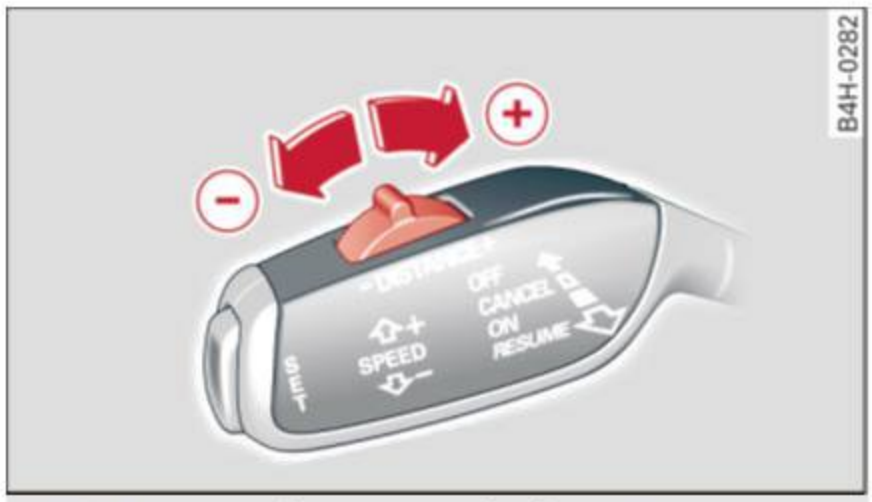

Fig. 97 Operating lever: setting the distance

- Tap the switch to display the current set distance ⇨ *fig. 97*.
- To increase or reduce the distance in increments, tap the switch again to the right or left. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching an object ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that speed and then adjusts to the set distance. If the object ahead accelerates, adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the stored speed.

The higher the speed, the greater the distance in meters ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended. That is equal to the general recommendation of "half the speed shown on the speedometer".

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and the way the object ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

The various symbols for the time increments appears briefly in the information line Ⓓ ⇨ *page 90, fig. 94* when you change the settings.

Distance 1: this setting corresponds to a distance of 92 ft (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1 second).

Distance 2: this setting corresponds to a distance of 118 ft (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1.3 seconds).

Distance 3: this setting corresponds to a distance of 164 ft (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), for example (time between: 1.8 seconds).

Distance 4: This setting corresponds to a distance of 210 ft (64 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), (time distance of 2.3 seconds).

WARNING

Following other vehicles too closely increases the risk of collisions and serious personal injury.

- Setting short distances to the traffic ahead reduces the time and distance available to bring your vehicle to a safe stop and makes it even more necessary to pay close attention to traffic.
- Always obey applicable traffic laws, use good judgment, and select a safe following distance for the traffic, road and weather conditions.

Tips

- **Distance 3** is set automatically each time you switch the ignition on.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Selecting the driving mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select the desired driving mode in drive select ⇨ *page 104*.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Request for driver intervention

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Fig. 98 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

In certain situations, the system will request you to take action:

- if the braking from the adaptive cruise control system is not enough to maintain enough distance to the object ahead.

The danger is indicated by the indicator light ⇨ *fig. 98*. An audio signal will also sound.

- Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

Audi braking guard

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Fig. 99 Instrument cluster: approach warning

The braking guard uses radar sensors and a video camera. It also functions within the limits of the system when adaptive cruise control is switched off.

What can the braking guard do?

When detected in time, the system can assess dangerous situations where an object ahead brakes suddenly or if your own vehicle is traveling at a high speed and approaching an object that is ▸

moving more slowly. The braking guard does not react if it cannot detect the situation.

The system advises you of various dangerous situations:

– The **distance warning** occurs if you drive too closely to the object ahead for a long period of time. If the object ahead brakes strongly, you would not be able to avoid a collision. The indicator light appears as an indication for this.
– The **approach warning** occurs when an object ahead is traveling more slowly or brakes strongly. When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking strongly. The danger is indicated by the indicator light ⇨ *fig. 99*. An audio signal will also sound.

If you do not react early enough or at all to a dangerous situation, the braking guard supports you with a braking intervention.

– If a collision is imminent, the system will first provide an **acute warning** by braking sharply.
– If you do not react to the acute warning, the braking guard can increase the braking force within the limits of the system [1]. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.
– The system can initiate complete deceleration shortly before a collision [1]. Full deceleration at high speeds occurs only in vehicles with adaptive cruise control and side assist (pre sense plus).
– If the braking guard determines that you are not braking strongly enough when there is an impending collision, it can increase the braking force.
– The pre sense functions also engage when there is an impending collision ⇨ *page 137*.

Which functions can be controlled?

You can switch the braking guard and the distance/approach warning on or off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 95, Settings in the Infotainment system*.

WARNING

Lack of attention can cause collisions, other accidents and serious personal injuries. The braking guard is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

– Always pay close attention to traffic, even when the braking guard is switched on. Be ready to intervene and be ready to take complete control whenever necessary. Always keep the safe and legal distance between your vehicle and vehicles up ahead.
– Braking guard works within limits and will not respond outside the system limits, for example when approaching a stopped vehicle or stationary obstacle (end of a traffic jam or vehicle that has broken down in traffic).
– Always remember that the radar sensor for the braking guard works only within defined detection and range limits that may prevent the proper detection of other vehicles.
– The radar sensor's function and range can be reduced by rain, snow and heavy spray. Moving vehicles up ahead may not be promptly detected or may not be detected at all.
– Reflective surfaces including crash barriers or tunnel entrances may impair the function of the radar sensor.

Tips

– You can cancel the braking with increasing force that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– Keep in mind that braking guard can brake unexpectedly. Always secure any cargo or objects that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.

[1] This is not available in some countries.

Settings in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi braking guard**.

System - Switch the braking guard **On**/**Off**. When you switch the ignition on, the message **Braking guard: Off** appears if the system is switched off.

Early warning - The distance and approach warnings in the display can be switched **On**/**Off**.

Tips

– Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.
– If you restrict or switch off the ESC, the braking guard also switches itself off ⇨ *page 121*.
– Switch braking guard off when you are loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship or other type of transportation. This can prevent undesired warnings from the braking guard system.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Braking guard: Off

This message appears if the system is switched off through the Infotainment system. Otherwise, if the system is turned off, the information appears every time shortly after the start of the trip.

The message also appears if the system is not available due to a malfunction or if the ESC is switched off ⇨ *page 121*. If this is the case, the system will not provide warnings about a possible collision.

Braking guard: engaged

This message appears if a sharp brake pressure was applied due to an acute warning.

ACC: unavailable

ACC and Audi braking guard: Unavailable

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect objects correctly and is switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. The pre sense functions may also be affected. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

ACC: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

ACC and Audi braking guard: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensors ⇨ *page 88, fig. 90*.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Gradient too steep

The road exceeds the maximum possible angle for safe adaptive cruise control operation. Adaptive cruise control is switched off.

ACC: only available in D, S or M

Select the D/S or M selector lever position.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Parking brake applied

The adaptive cruise control system switches off automatically if the parking brake is set.

ACC: Currently unavailable. Stability control (ESC) input.

This message appears if the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) is taking action to stabilize the vehicle. In this case, adaptive cruise control switches off automatically.

ACC off: Manual control!

This message appears when adaptive cruise control cannot set the parking brake. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

• • •

Three white dots appear if a setting cannot be selected with the operating lever. For example, this happens if adaptive cruise control cannot start driving automatically in stop-and-go traffic because the driver has not fastened their safety belt. ▸

4G0012721BB

Door open

The adaptive cruise control system cannot switch on when a door is open.

Stationary object ahead

This message appears if you would like to switch adaptive cruise control on and there is a stationary object or obstacle directly ahead of your vehicle.

Audi active lane assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is ready for operation when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and therefore only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to: vehicles without side assist

The system will not warn you before crossing a lane marker line if you have activated the turn signal. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise control

The corrective steering is targeted based on the driving situation. In addition to the lane marker lines, the system can also take into account other objects such as guard rails. If they are detected in close proximity to the vehicle, active lane assist helps prevent the vehicle from driving too close to them. There is also passing assistance. The system does not provide any corrective steering if it detects that you are passing another vehicle.

WARNING

- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
- There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
- Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
- The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray or light shining into the camera. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
- Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, a banked roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

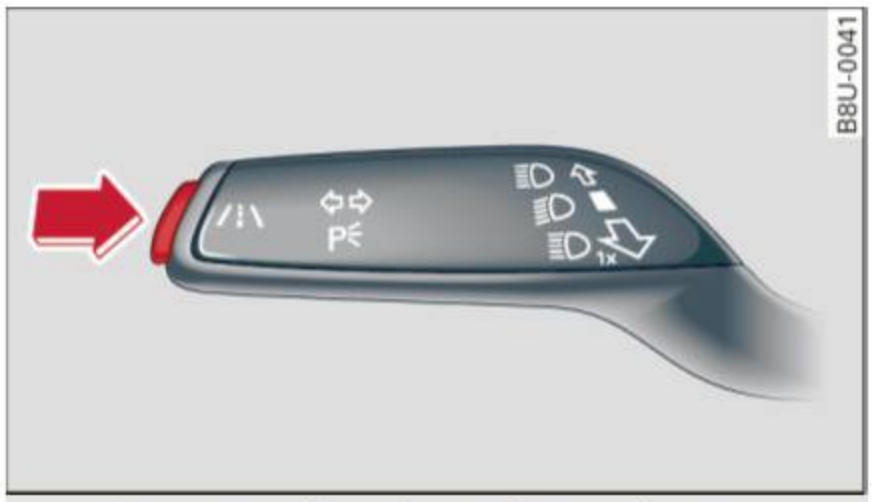

Fig. 100 Turn signal lever: button for active lane assist

Fig. 101 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

- Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ *fig. 100*. The ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off.

Indicator lights

⚠ **Ready:** the indicator light turns on when the system is ready for use. The system can now be operated.

⚠ **Not ready:** the indicator light turns on if the system is switched on but is inoperable. This may be due to the following reasons:

– There is no lane marker line.
– The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting).
– The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).
– The lane is too narrow or too wide.
– The curve is too narrow.
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel.

Tips

Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 101* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

View in instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Fig. 102 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and providing warnings

Fig. 103 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on but not ready to provide warnings

You can call up the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 21*.

An additional indicator appears in the Head-up display*.

White line(s)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist warns you before leaving a lane ⇨ *fig. 102*. In addition, the steering wheel vibrates lightly.
Gray line(s)	Active lane assist is activated, but not ready to give warning ⇨ *fig. 103*.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable. No camera view

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if:

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 97, fig. 101* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: Currently unavailable

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: System fault!

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. If this is the case, active lane assist does not switch off, but it is "not ready" to provide a warning. The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane. However, you are responsible for driving the vehicle and must steer it yourself.

Adjusting the vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)** * **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibration warning in the steering wheel on or off.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

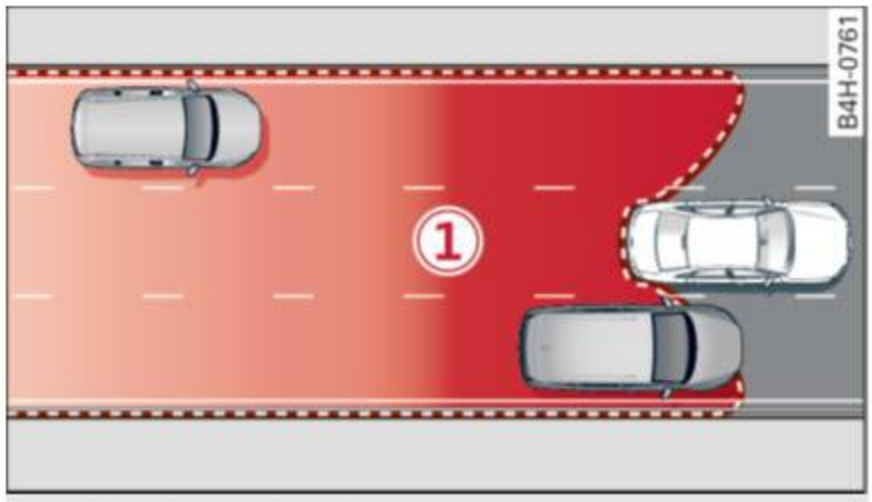

Fig. 104 Sensor detection range

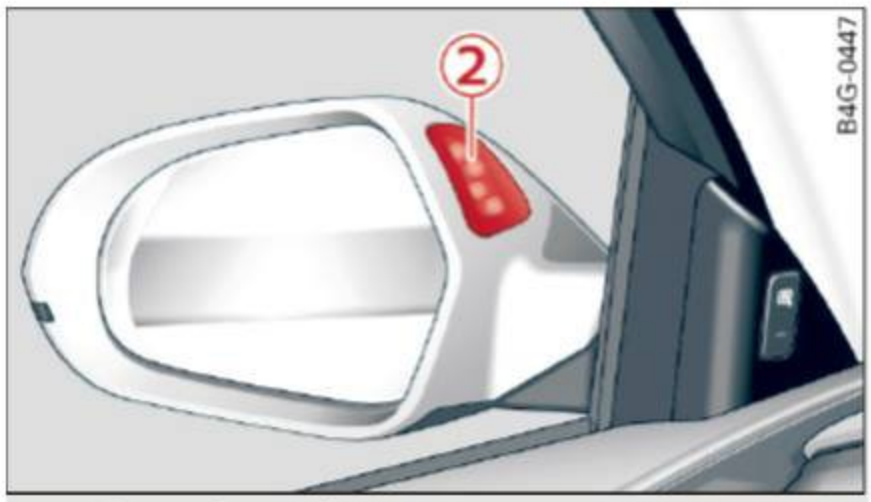

Fig. 105 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 104*: if a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror ⇨ *fig. 105* turns on.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim. ▸

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is *warning* you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 100*.

Applies to: vehicles with active lane assist

The display in the mirror can also blink if you have not activated a turn signal: if you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, side assist will warn you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 101*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

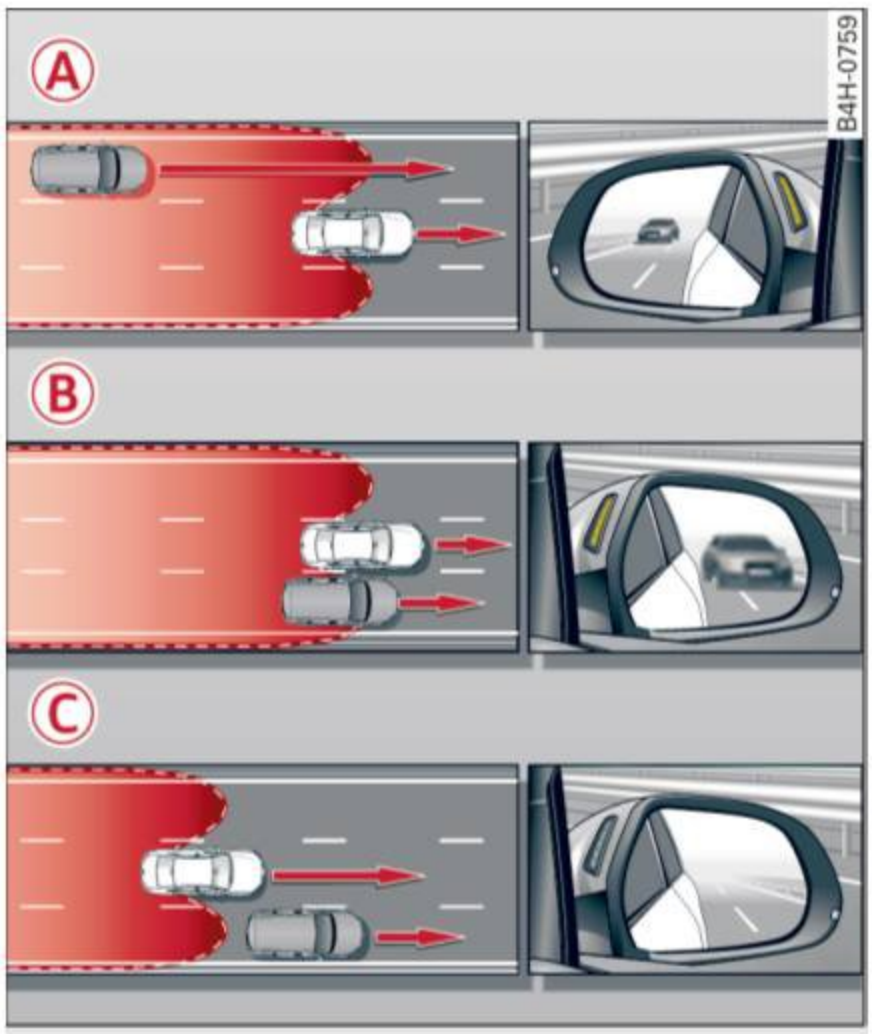

Fig. 106 Driving situations

Fig. 107 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 19 mph (30 km/h).

Ⓐ Vehicles that are approaching

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the exterior mirror will turn on.

Ⓑ Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your "blind spot", at the latest.

Ⓒ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example:

– If the lanes are narrow or if your are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the ▶

system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 107* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 231*.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
– In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.
– Audi side assist cannot detect all vehicles under all conditions, which can increase the risk of accidents.
– Please note that side assist only displays approaching vehicles or vehicles in your blind spot if your vehicle is traveling at least 19 mph (30 km/h).
– In certain situations, the system may not work or its function may be limited. For example:
  – The display may not turn on at the right time if vehicles are approaching or passing very quickly.
  – In poor weather conditions, such as heavy rain, snow or fog.
  – In very wide lanes, in tight curves or when there are slopes in the roadway, vehicles in the neighboring lanes may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 262*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

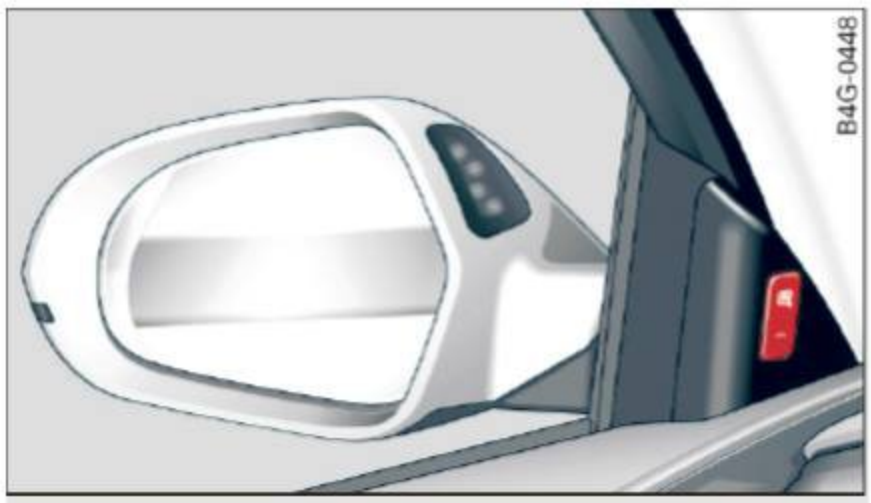

Fig. 108 Driver's door: side assist button

▸ Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 100*. The LED in the button turns on when side assist is switched on.

Adjusting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change.

Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage. The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage.

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If side assist switches off by itself, the LED in the button turns off and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display:

Audi side assist: Currently unavailable. No sensor vision

The radar sensor vision is impaired. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area in front of the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 99, fig. 107*.

Audi side assist: Currently unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Audi side assist: System fault!

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: Unavailable when towing

Side assist switches off automatically when a factory-installed trailer hitch is connected to the electrical connector on the trailer. There is no guarantee the system will switch off when using a retrofitted trailer hitch. Do not use side assist when towing a trailer.

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection

Description

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

The night vision assist can detect, highlight and, if necessary, warn about pedestrians and large wild animals.

Night vision assist with pedestrian and wild animal detection assists you at night by using an infrared camera to monitor the area in front of your vehicle, within the limits of the system. It can display objects up to a distance of approximately 1000 feet (300 m). The thermal image detected by the camera is shown in the instrument cluster display. Warm areas appear lighter and cold areas appear darker.

4G0012721BB

Highlighting detected pedestrians and wild animals

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Fig. 109 Instrument cluster: yellow highlighted pedestrians

Fig. 110 Instrument cluster: symbol when the infrared image is not visible

Within the limits of the system, the night vision assist can detect pedestrians and wild animals that are between approximately 32 ft (10 m) and 295 ft (90 m) in front of the vehicle and within the detection zone. Within the limits of the system ⇨ *page 103*, a pedestrian or wild animal detected when the low beams are switched on is highlighted in yellow ⇨ *fig. 109*. Animal recognition is not active within highly developed areas. The system only detects large wild animals such as deer.

Tips

If another display such as navigation replaces the image from the night vision assist the symbol appears in a tab ⇨ *fig. 110*. You can access night vision assist using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 22*.

Pedestrian and wild animal warning

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Fig. 111 Instrument cluster: Ⓐ pedestrian warning, Ⓑ wild animal warning

Fig. 112 Instrument cluster: Ⓐ pedestrian warning/Ⓑ wild animal warning, when the night vision assist image is not selected in the instrument cluster display

Image in the instrument cluster/head-up display*

If there are pedestrians or wild animals in an area in front of your vehicle that is classified as critical, the system will direct your attention to this:

- Pedestrians or wild animals are highlighted in red and the corresponding symbol or turns on ⇨ *fig. 111*.
- There is also an audible signal.

The area classified as critical is based on the vehicle speed and the steering wheel angle. Pedestrian and wild animal warning encourages you to pay more attention.

If the night vision assist image is replaced by another display (such as the on-board computer), the red or indicator light ⇨ *fig. 112* will appear if there is a pedestrian or wild animal warning. ▶

If the head-up display* is switched on and the night vision assist content is activated, or will appear in the head-up display*.

Marking light*

To direct the driver's attention to a pedestrian, the headlights can flash on the pedestrian three times in a row when there is a pedestrian warning.

This occurs at speeds above approximately 35 mph (60 km/h) if you are outside of illuminated areas and no detected vehicles are shown. The high beam assistant* controls the marking light* ⇨ *page 42, High beam assistant*.

The marking light is not used for wild animals.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Fig. 113 Front of the vehicle: night vision assistant camera

The following situations may affect the function of the night vision assist system:

– Poor visibility such as snow, rain, fog or heavy spray
– Dirty lens on the night vision assist camera

Make sure the night vision assist camera ⇨ *fig. 113* is not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions because that can affect the camera function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

The pedestrian and wild animal recognition depends on the temperature difference between the person/wild animal and the background. People/wild animals may not be detected if the difference is too small. The pedestrian/wild animal marking and the marking light* deactivate at temperatures above approximately 77 °F (25 °C) and during daylight. If the night vision assist image is selected in the instrument cluster display, then the symbol appears at the top on the right side.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic and the area around your vehicle when night vision assist is switched on. The driver is always responsible for assessing the traffic situation.

– Night vision assist can only warn about people and wild animals located within the visual range of the infrared camera. The visual range corresponds to the image in the instrument cluster display.
– Night vision assist may not detect people or wild animals and mark them if
  – they are not in an upright position, for example if they are sitting or lying down and/or
  – the silhouette in the display appears incomplete or interrupted, for example because the person is partially covered by a vehicle or an animal by tall grass. This could increase the risk of an accident.
– Never try to swerve around animals if doing so will endanger you or other road users, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

– Even though the system evaluates the shape and heat given off by all detected objects, there are limits to the system. There may be false warnings.
– For technical reasons, the image pauses in split second intervals.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Fig. 114 Area around the light switch: night vision assistant button

Requirement: switch the ignition on and turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position.

- Press the button ⇨ *fig. 114*. The heat image from the night vision camera appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Press the button again to switch the night vision assist off.

If conditions are bright enough, night vision assist can be switched on without moving the light switch to the **AUTO** position. Pedestrian and wild animal highlighting and warnings are only active when it is dark outside and the headlights are switched on.

Adjusting the contrast

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Night vision assist contrast**.

When the night vision assist is switched on and the image is visible in the instrument cluster display, you can adjust the contrast in the image from **Min** to **Max**.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with night vision assist

Night vision assist: System fault

The system cannot guarantee correct function and is switched off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Night vision assist: Currently unavailable

The system cannot guarantee correct function at this time and is switched off.

Night vision assist: Only available at night with lights turned on

Night vision assist only works when it is dark outside and the headlights are on.

Night vision assist: Pedestrian marking currently unavailable

The pedestrian and wild animal marking was switched off by the system.

Audi drive select (drive settings)

Introduction

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle settings in one vehicle. The driver can select **Comfort**, **Auto** and **Dynamic** modes in the Infotainment system to switch between, for example, a sporty and a comfortable driving mode.

Settings can be adjusted to your personal preferences in **Individual** mode. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty engine setting with light steering.

Description

The following systems, among other things, are influenced by drive select:

Engine and automatic transmission

Depending on the mode, the engine and automatic transmission respond more quickly or in a more balanced manner to accelerator pedal movements. In the sporty dynamic mode, the transmission shifts at higher speed ranges.

Adaptive air suspension*

The adaptive air suspension* is an electronically-controlled air suspension and damping system. ▶

The adjustment depends on the driving mode selected, steering movements, the driver's braking and acceleration, and as the road surface, vehicle speed and load.

The vehicle ground clearance depends on the mode selected and the speed. When you are in the **auto**, the highway setting is activated when you drive above 75 mph (120 km/h) for more than 30 seconds. The ground clearance is increased automatically if the speed drops below 44 mph (70 km/h) for more than 120 seconds.

Steering

The power steering adapts. Indirect steering that moves easily as in comfort mode is especially suited to long drives on a highway. The Dynamic mode provides sporty, direct steering.

Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering

The steering ratio changes based on vehicle speed in order to maintain optimum steering effort for the driver at all times. This sets the steering to be less sensitive at higher speeds in order to provide improved vehicle control. At reduced speeds, steering is more direct in order to keep the steering effort as minimal as possible when the driver is maneuvering the vehicle. At low and average speeds, dynamic steering* additionally provides more responsive steering performance.

Sport differential*

As a component of the all wheel drive system (quattro) ⇨ *page 124*, the sport differential distributes the driving power to the rear axle depending on the situation. The distribution of power varies from balanced (comfort) to sporty (dynamic) depending on the selected mode. The goal is a high level of agility and ability to accelerate on curves. The vehicle is very responsive to steering.

Cornering light*

The cornering light adapts the high beams to the direction of the curve depending on the speed. The pivoting action and the lighting also adapt to the mode.

Adaptive cruise control*

The behavior when accelerating can be adjusted from comfortable to sporty, depending on the drive select mode. Adaptive cruise control also responds to the driving behavior of the vehicle ahead in a more conservative or sporty manner.

Engine sound*

The engine sound adapts to the current mode and can be subtle to sporty.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive air suspension

- Make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle when parking. The height of the vehicle (ground clearance) can change once it is parked due to temperature fluctuations, changes to the load conditions and changes to the driving modes.
- When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship or by other means, only tie the vehicle down at the running surface of the tires, which is the outer circumference. Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle may not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Tips

- In some models, the maximum vehicle speed can only be reached in the auto and dynamic modes.
- The S selector lever position automatically engages if the dynamic mode is selected.
- Applies to: vehicles with dynamic steering: operating noise is heard when starting or stopping the engine. This does not indicate a problem.

4G0012721BB

Selecting the driving mode

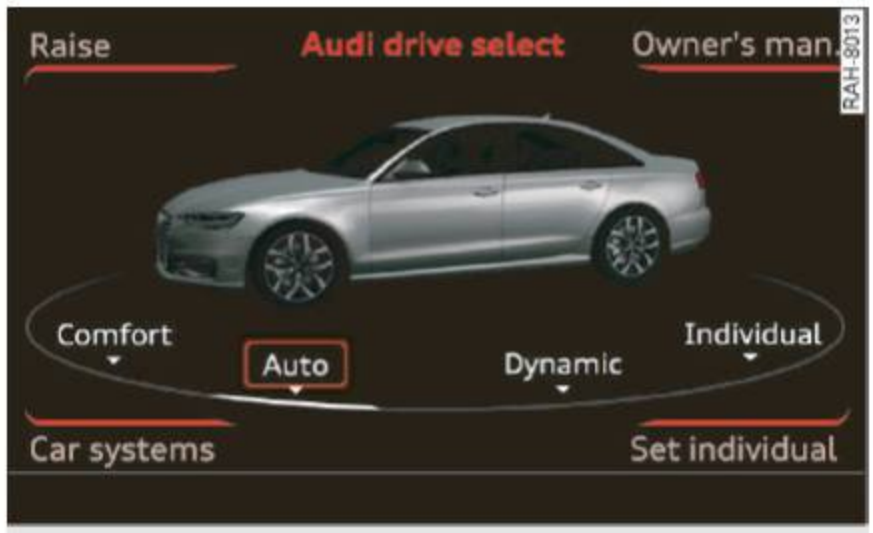

Fig. 115 Infotainment: drive select

▸ To select the mode, select the following in the Infotainment: CAR function button > **Comfort**, **Auto**, **Dynamic** or **Individual**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, after changing modes, briefly take your foot off the accelerator pedal so that the recently selected mode is also activated for the engine.

Comfort - provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

Auto - provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

Dynamic - gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

Individual - ⇨ *page 106*.

WARNING

Pay attention to traffic when operating the drive select to reduce the risk of an accident.

Adjusting the Individual mode

You can adjust the vehicle settings to your personal preferences.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **Set individual** control button. Once you select the menu, you will automatically drive in the **Individual** mode.

After you have closed the settings, you will automatically drive in the **Individual** mode.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust. The following table gives an overview of the characteristics.

Systems	comfort	auto	dynamic
Engine/transmission	balanced	balanced	sporty
Air suspension*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Steering	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Dynamic steering*	comfortable/indirect	balanced/direct	sporty/direct
Sport differential*	balanced	agile	sporty
Adaptive cruise control*	comfortable	balanced	sporty
Engine sound*	subtle	subtle/sporty[a)]	sporty

a) Subtle in the selector lever position D and sporty in S.

Tips

Your **Individual** mode settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Raising/lowering the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive air suspension

You can raise your vehicle temporarily, for example to drive over a tall curb. ▸

Raising the vehicle

- Select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Raise** control button.
- Wait for the arrows or segments in the Infotainment system display to stop blinking and the vehicle to reach its final position.

Lowering the vehicle

- To lower the vehicle, select the following in the Infotainment system: the CAR function button > **Lower** control button.
- Wait for the arrows or segments in the Infotainment system display to stop blinking and the vehicle to lower completely.

Note

– Remember that your vehicle is not suitable for driving offroad even when it is raised. There is not enough ground clearance.
– If the vehicle is raised, it will lower automatically when driving 62 mph (100 km/h) or faster.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive air suspension

Air suspension: Vehicle is too high. Controlling level...

Air suspension: Vehicle is too low. Controlling level...

The driver message switches off when the level control process is complete.

Parking systems

General information

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected *in front of* and *behind* the vehicle ⇨ *page 109*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. This display assists you when you are cross or parallel parking ⇨ *page 110*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 109*.

The **peripheral cameras** assist you with parking and maneuvering. You are aided by various cameras depending on the vehicle equipment level ⇨ *page 113*. The parking system plus functions are also available ⇨ *page 109*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or leaving a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.
- Make sure the sensors are not obstructed by stickers, deposits or other materials. If they are, the sensor function could be impaired.

For additional information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 231*.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - Objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - Objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - Objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Keep enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass.
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles.
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust.
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. When doing this, there should be good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 118*.
- Please refer to the instructions for towing a trailer located in ⇨ *page 118*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for park aid to operate.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

Parking system plus provides audio and visual signals when parking.

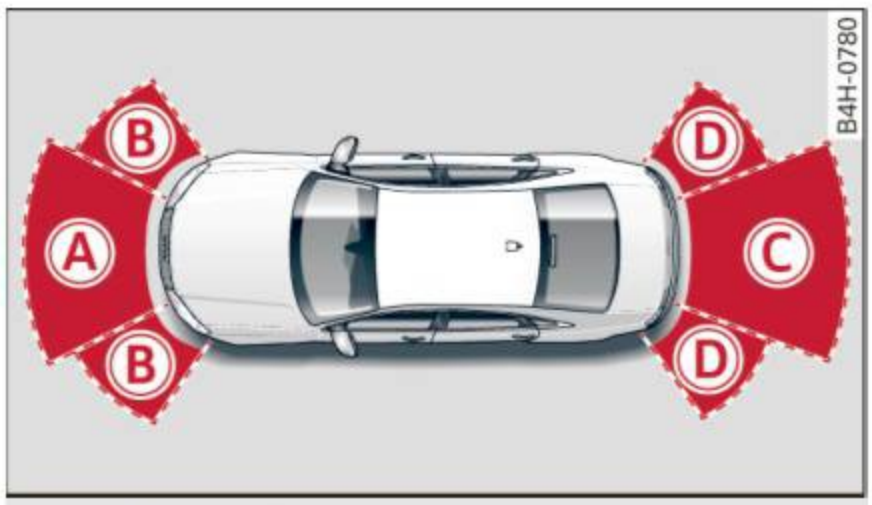

Fig. 116 Display field

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the sensor function. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

The display field begins approximately at:

Ⓐ	4 ft (1.20 m)
Ⓑ	3 ft (0.90 m)
Ⓒ	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
Ⓓ	3 ft (0.90 m)

The closer you get to the obstacle, the shorter the interval between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when the obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 meters) away.

Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*!

If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually drops after about four seconds (this does not apply in the continuous tone range).

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus

Fig. 117 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 117*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Visual display

The segments in front of and behind the vehicle help you to determine the distance between you and an obstacle.

The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*!

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

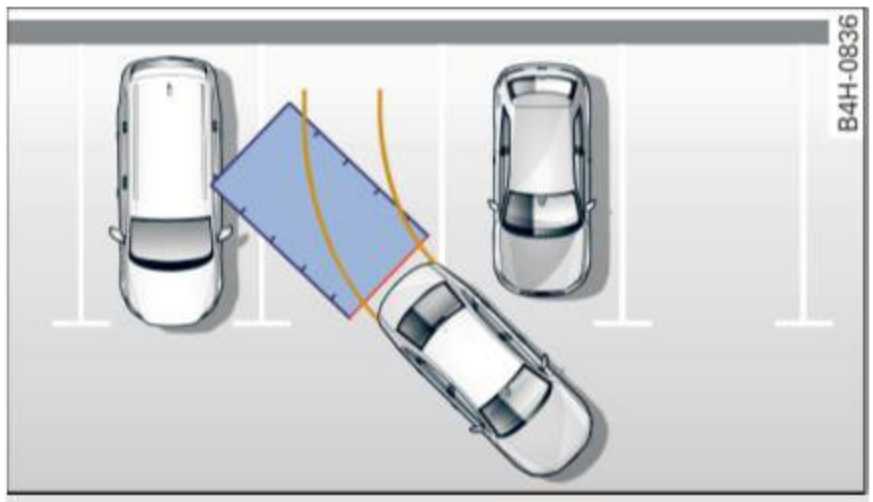

Fig. 118 Illustration: Cross parking

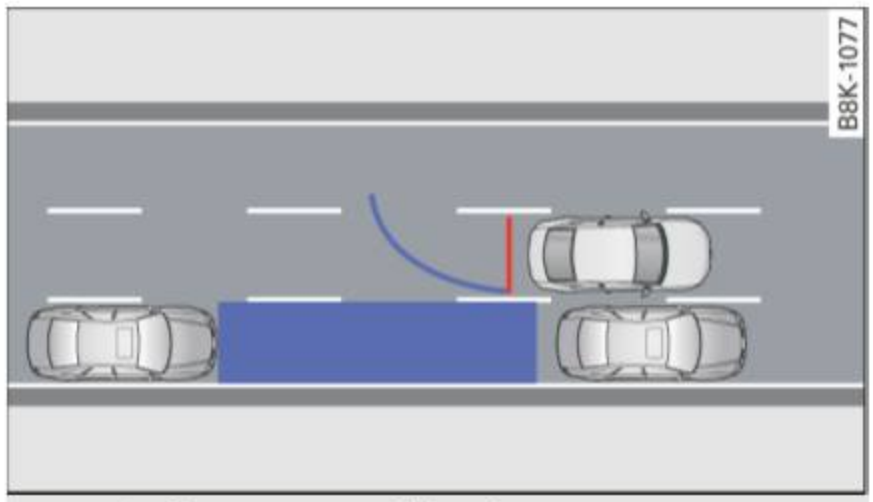

Fig. 119 Illustration: parallel parking

The rearview camera gives you two views: you can use *Cross parking* to park in a parking space or a garage, for example ⇨ *fig. 118*. You can use *parallel parking* if you would like to park on the side of the road ⇨ *fig. 119*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

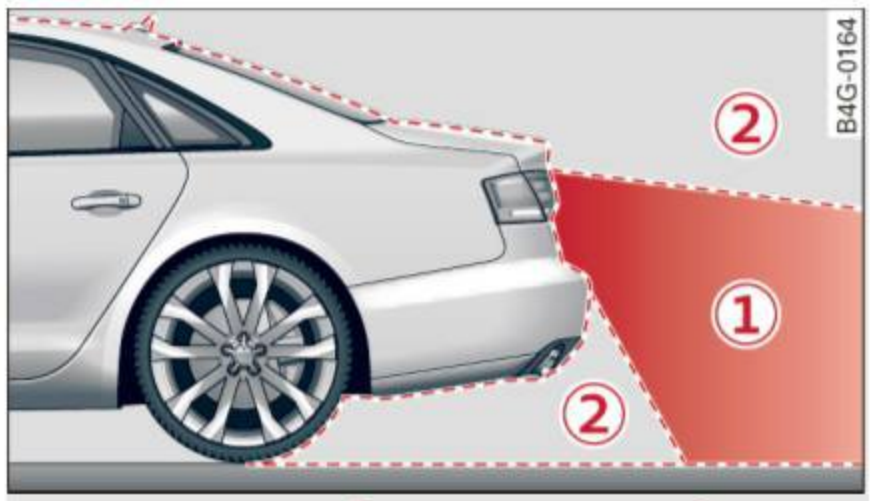

Fig. 120 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera.

Fig. 121 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 121* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can affect the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 120*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are outside of this area ② are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away: ▶

- For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
- If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
- If driven toward protruding objects.
- If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

– Applies to: vehicles with air suspension: the accuracy of the orientation lines and blue surfaces decreases when the vehicle is raised/lowered ⇨ *page 104*.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*.
- The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *page 109, fig. 117*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching between the rearview camera and optical display

- Press the **Graphic** control button ⑤ ⇨ *page 111, fig. 122* to see the optical display.
- Press the **Rear view** control button to see the rearview camera image.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

Tips

- The visual display in the left part of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle areas.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 118*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

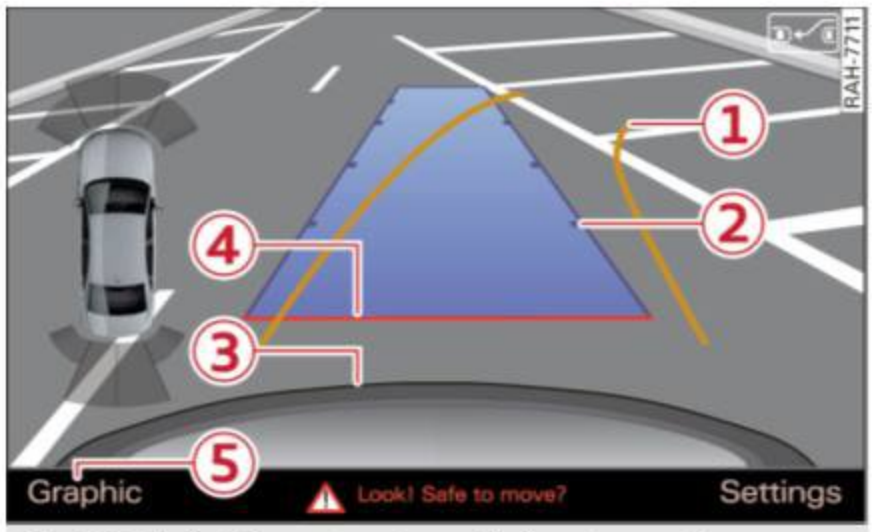

Fig. 122 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

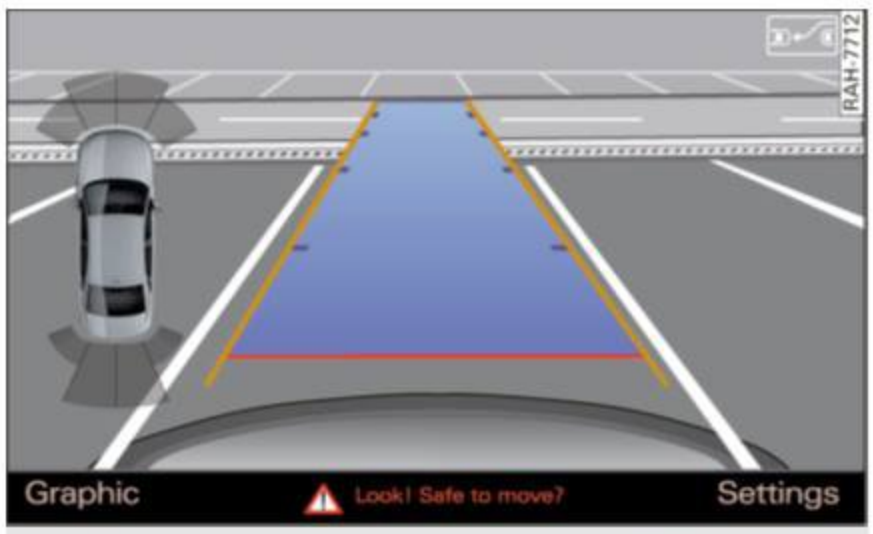

Fig. 123 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

- Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
- The orange orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 122*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
- While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using ▶

the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, ⇨ ! *in General information on page 111*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Parallel parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.

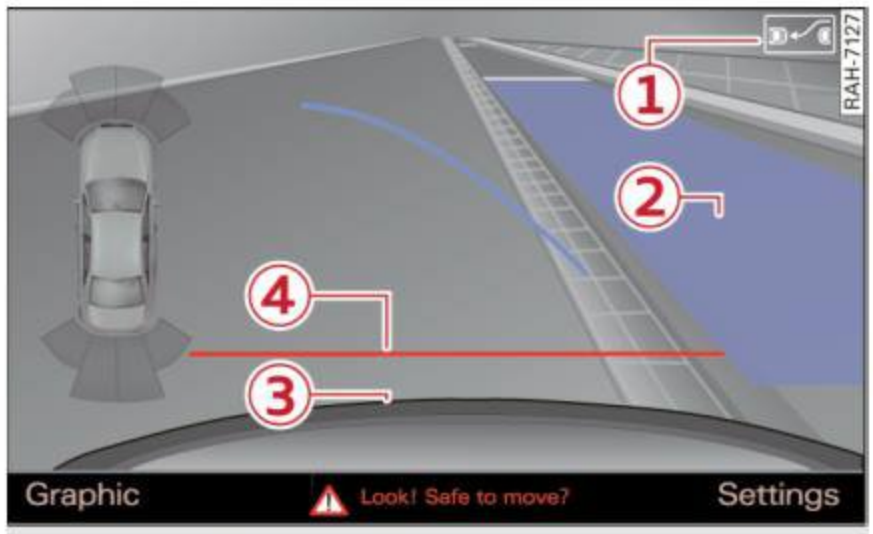

Fig. 124 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

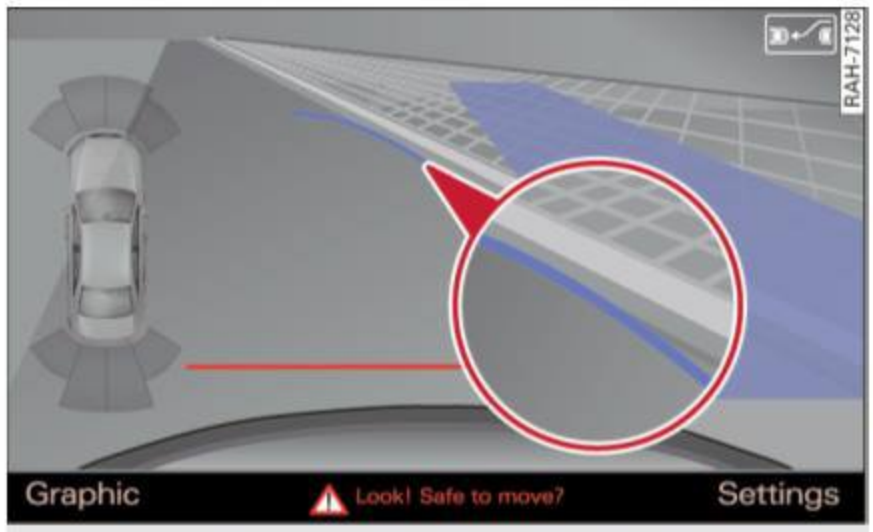

Fig. 125 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to "Information for parking next to obstacles" ⇨ *page 112*.

- Activate the turn signal.
- Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m).
- Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system is turned on and the **Cross parking** view is displayed.
- Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *fig. 124*. The **Parallel parking** view is displayed.
- Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, ⇨ ! *in General information on page 111*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- Back up into the parking spot. When the blue curve ⇨ *fig. 125* is near the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, stop the vehicle ⇨ ! *in General information on page 111*.
- With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*, ⇨ ! *in General information on page 111*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue surface so that there is sufficient space from the obstacle. The surface must not be touching. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *fig. 125* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance.

! Note

Keep enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Peripheral cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

With this equipment, the parking system plus* ⇨ *page 109* is supplemented with various peripheral cameras.

Depending on vehicle equipment, you are provided with the following views: area around the vehicle, front corner view and rear corner view, view in front of the vehicle and behind the vehicle.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

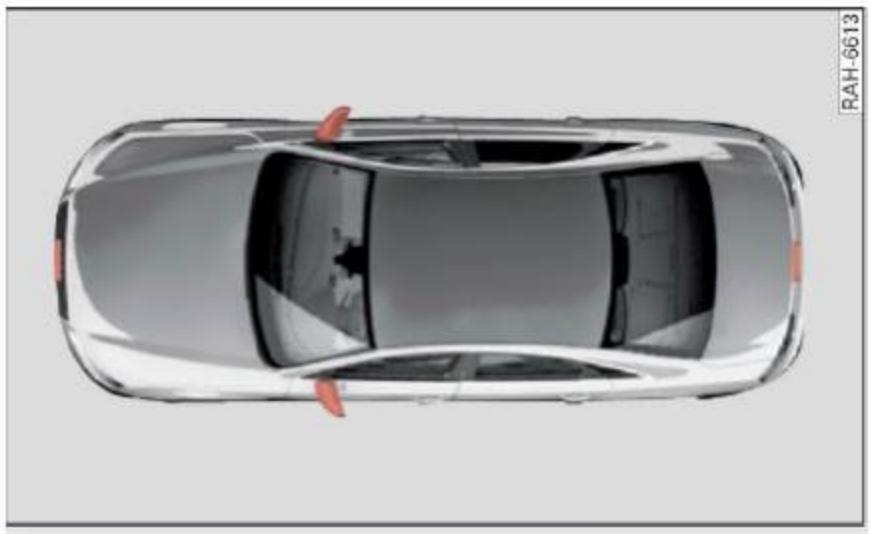

Fig. 126 Location of peripheral cameras

The peripheral cameras are located in the radiator grille, in the luggage compartment lid and on both exterior mirrors ⇨ *fig. 126*.

Make sure that the lenses are not covered by deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the system. For information on cleaning, refer to ⇨ *page 231*.

In the **Surrounding** mode, black corners are shown in the vehicle silhouette. Objects in these areas are outside of the camera's field of view and are not detected.

The accuracy of the orientation lines and the blue surfaces is reduced if the adaptive air suspension* is faulty, if the vehicle is lifted or if the **Dynamic** mode is activated ⇨ *page 104*.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 108*.
- If the position or the installation angle of a camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Keep in mind that the image in the display is distorted if the exterior mirror housing has been moved out of place.
- Use the **Rear** mode and the **Corner view (rear)** mode only when the luggage compartment lid is fully closed. Otherwise the image in the display will be incorrect.
- The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.
- Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision. The objects appear both altered and inaccurate on the screen.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 108*.
- The Infotainment display shows the direction in which the rear of the vehicle is traveling based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Tips

If the ⇄/⇄/⇄ symbol appears in the display and the respective display area is grayed out, then the power exterior mirrors were folded in or the driver's door/front passenger's door/luggage compartment lid was opened.

Switching on or off

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

Fig. 127 Center console: button P

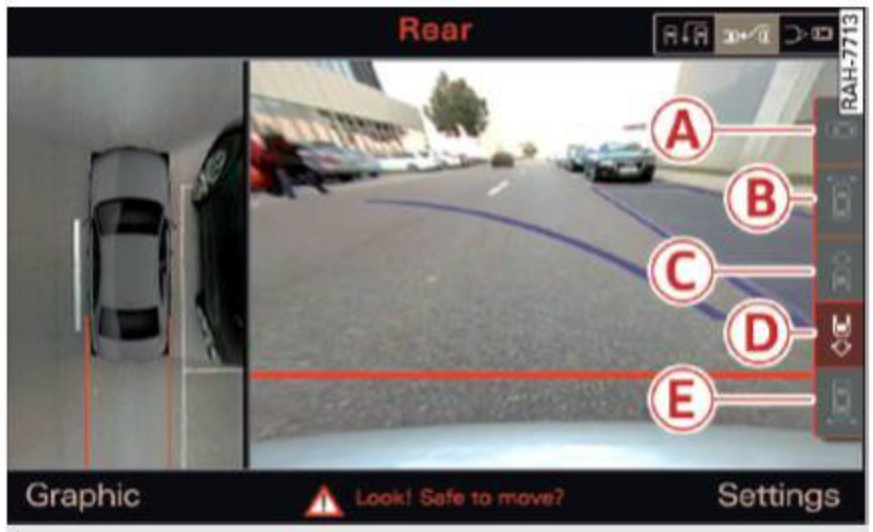

Fig. 128 Infotainment system: select the mode

Switching on

- Shift into reverse, or
- Press the P button in the center console ⇨ *fig. 127*. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Selecting the mode

- Turn the control knob to the symbol for the desired mode Ⓐ through Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 128* and press the control knob.

Switching off

- Drive faster than 6 mph (10 km/h), or
- Press the P button, or
- Switch the ignition off.

You may select from the following modes:

Ⓐ - Surrounding ⇨ *page 114*

Ⓑ - Corner view (front) ⇨ *page 115*

Ⓒ - Front ⇨ *page 115*

Ⓓ - Rear ⇨ *page 115*

Ⓔ - Corner view (rear) ⇨ *page 115*

Surrounding

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

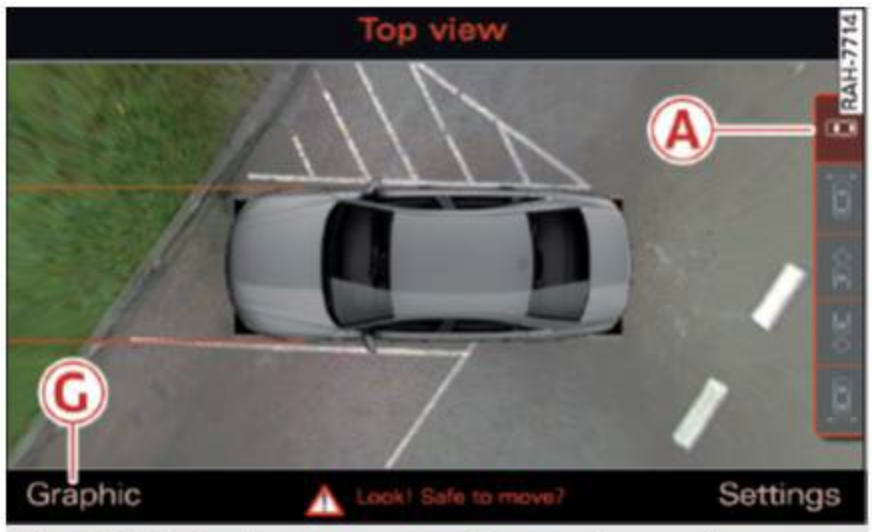

Fig. 129 Infotainment system: Surrounding mode

This view is ideal for maneuvering. The vehicle surroundings are shown using the camera images. The vehicle image is shown by the system.

Selecting Surrounding

- Select the Ⓐ symbol with the control knob and press the control knob.

Switching between optical view and camera image

- Press the **Graphic** Ⓖ control button to see the optical display.
- To display the camera image, press the **Camera** control button.

Corner view (front)/Corner view (rear)

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

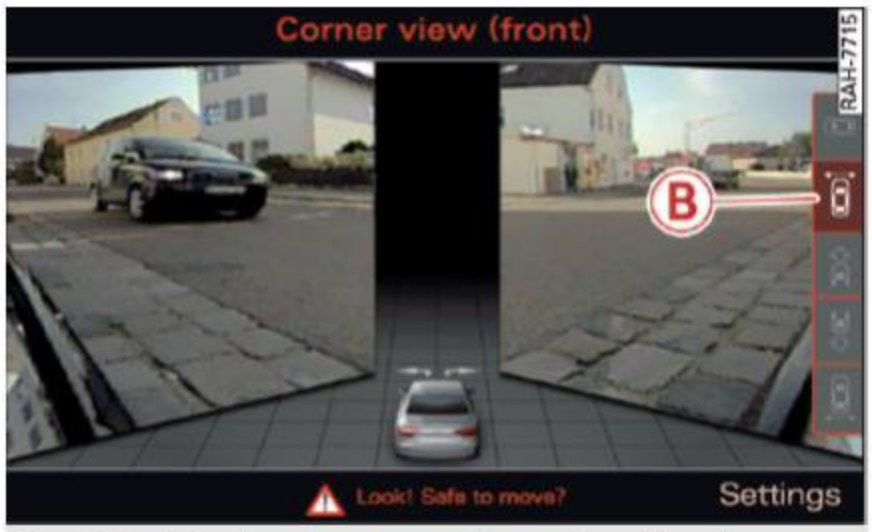

Fig. 130 Infotainment system: Corner view (front)

Fig. 131 Infotainment system: Corner view (rear)

This view can assist you for example, when you are exiting from an area with poor visibility. The area at the front and rear sides of the vehicles is displayed.

- To show the side view toward the front, select the symbol Ⓑ ⇨ *fig. 130* with the control knob and press the control knob.
- To show the side view toward the rear, select the symbol Ⓔ ⇨ *fig. 131* with the control knob and press the control knob.

Front

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

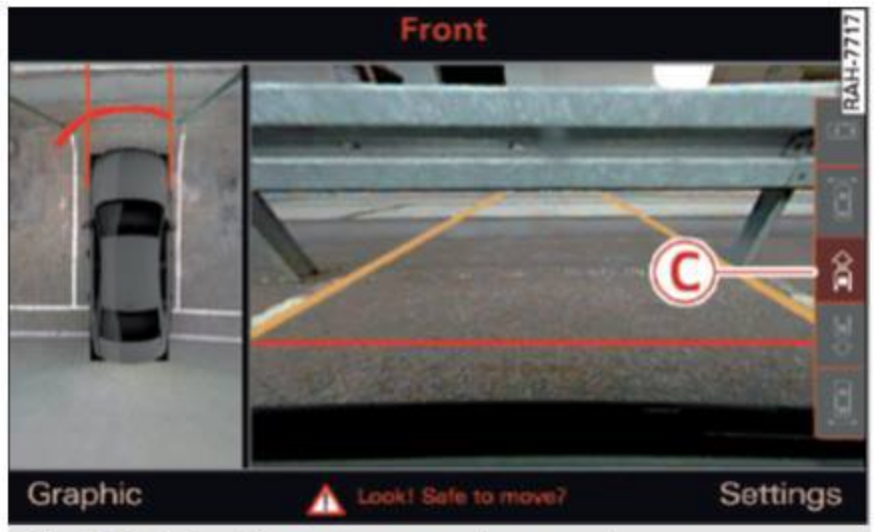

Fig. 132 Infotainment system: front mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range in front of the vehicle. The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 114*.

- Select the Ⓒ symbol with the control knob. The orange orientation lines mark the expected path of the vehicle. Stop the vehicle when the red orientation line* borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*.

Rear

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

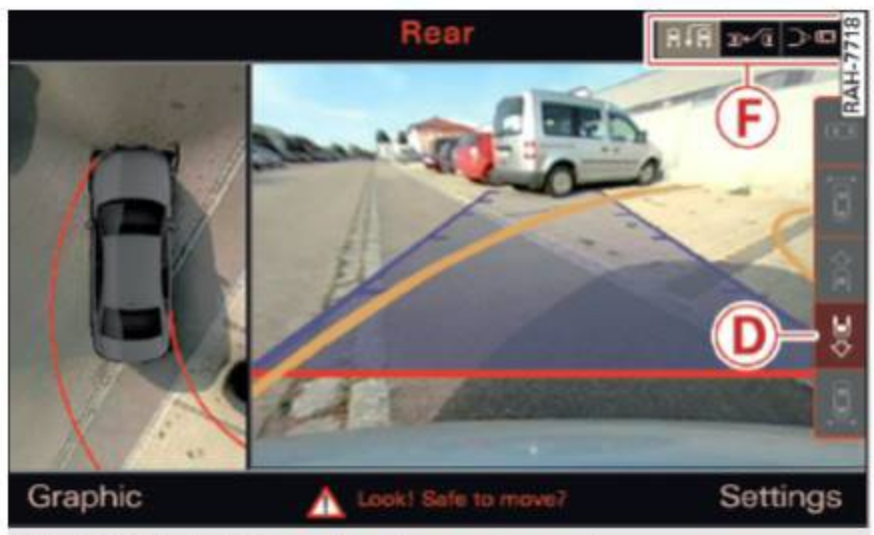

Fig. 133 Infotainment system: rear mode

This view assists you for example, in using the full maneuvering range behind the vehicle. The area behind the vehicle is displayed. The vehicle surroundings are shown in the left area of the display. You can switch between the optical display and camera image ⇨ *page 114*.

- Select the symbol Ⓓ with the control knob. ▶

You can choose between three different views in this mode.

- To cross park, parallel park or position the vehicle in front of a trailer*, press the control button (F) on the control panel repeatedly until the symbol for the desired mode is selected.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

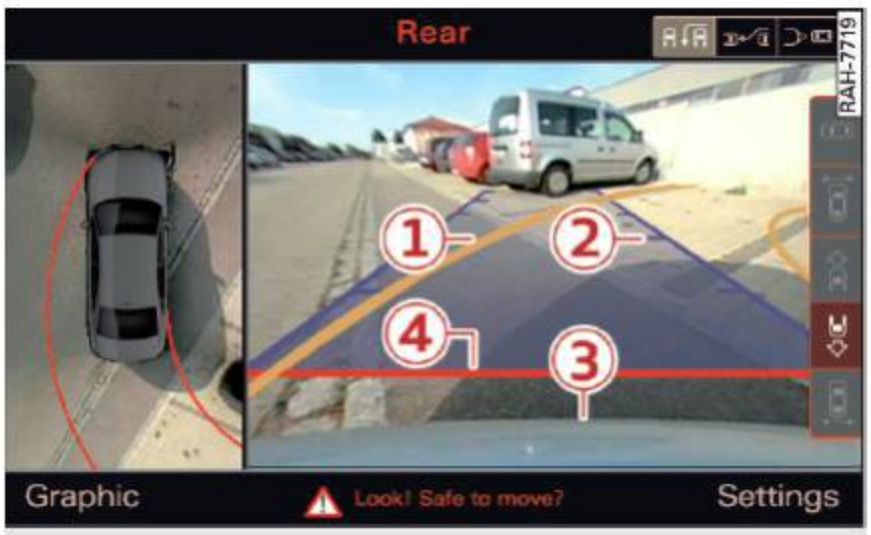

Fig. 134 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

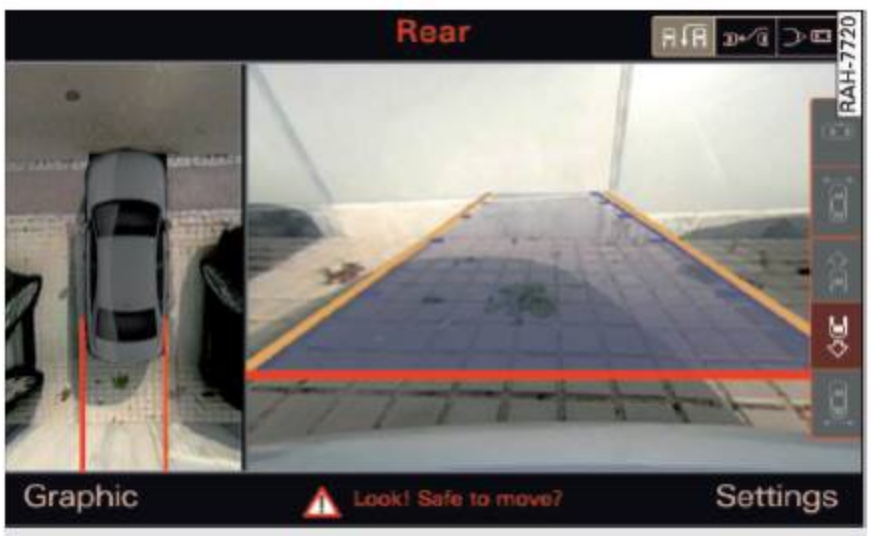

Fig. 135 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

Requirement: cross parking must be selected ⇨ *page 115*.

- The orange orientation lines (1) show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines appear in the parking space ⇨ *fig. 134*. Use the markings (2) to help you estimate the distance to an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 ft (1 m). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear.
- While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 113*. (3) represents the rear bumper. You should stop reversing at the latest when the red orientation line (4) borders an object ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 110*.

Parallel parking

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

This view may be used when parallel parking along the side of a street.

Fig. 136 Infotainment: blue surfaces aligned in the parking space

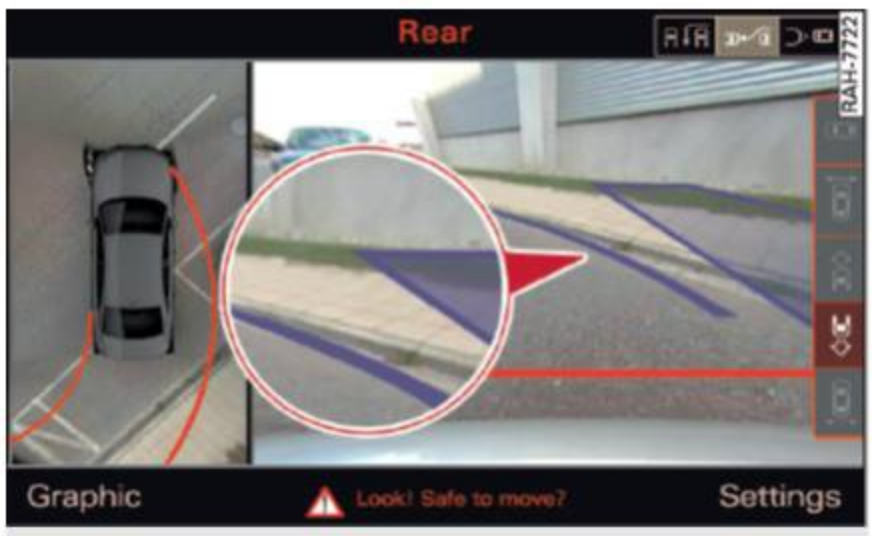

Fig. 137 Infotainment: contact of the blue curved line with the curb

Parking on the right is described here. It is identical when parking on the left.

If there is an obstacle next to the parking space (such as a wall), refer to Information for parking next to obstacles ⇨ *page 117*.

- Activate the turn signal.
- Position your vehicle next to a parked vehicle in front of the desired parking space. The distance to this vehicle should be approximately 3 ft. (1 m).

- Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear. The parking system must be turned on and the **Cross parking** view must be displayed.
- Press the control button on the Infotainment unit ① ⇨ *page 112, fig. 124*. The **Parallel parking** view is displayed.
- Back up and align your vehicle so the blue area ② borders on the rear end of the vehicle behind you or on the parking space line ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 ft (5 meters) to the rear. The long side of the blue area should be on the curb. The entire blue area must fit into the parking space.
- With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the right as far as it will go.
- Back into the parking space until the blue curve ⇨ *page 112, fig. 125* touches the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. Stop the vehicle.
- With the vehicle stopped, turn the steering wheel to the left as far as it will go.
- Continue to back into the parking space until the vehicle is parked parallel to the curb ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. ③ represents the rear bumper. At the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red orientation line ④ borders an object. Keep an eye on the front of your vehicle while doing this.

Parking next to obstacles

If there is an obstacle (such as a wall) next to the parking space, position the vehicle so there is more space on that side. Position the long side of the blue area so that there is sufficient space from the object. The area must not be on the curb. You will also need to start turning the steering wheel earlier. The blue curve ⇨ *page 112, fig. 125* must **not** touch the obstacle, but rather there should be enough distance.

Tips

The left or right orientation lines and surfaces will be displayed, depending on the turn signal being used.

Trailer mode

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

This view assists you in positioning the vehicle in front of a trailer.

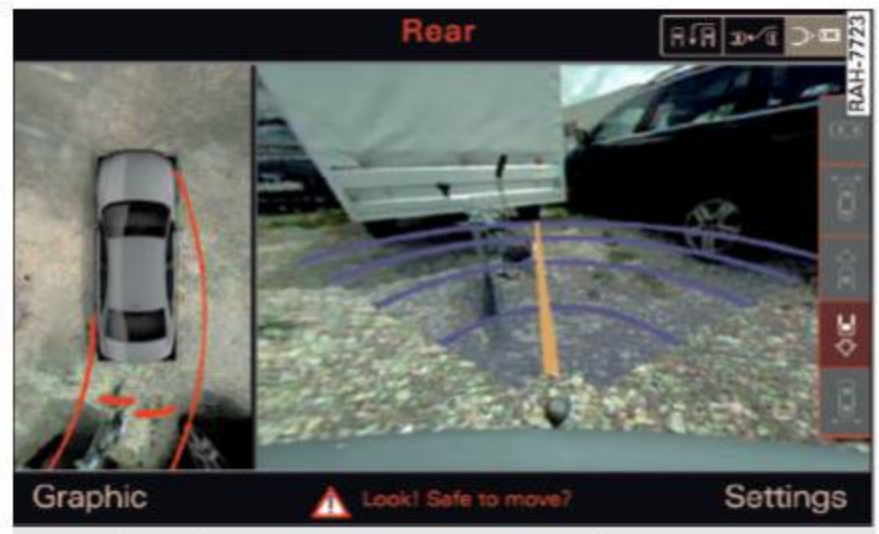

Fig. 138 Infotainment system: rear mode

Requirement: the trailer mode must be selected ⇨ *page 115*.

- Now you can position your vehicle in front of the trailer ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 113*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 113*. The orange orientation line indicates the expected path toward the trailer hitch. Use the blue lines to help you estimate the distance to the trailer hitch.

Setting the mode

Applies to: vehicles with peripheral cameras

- Select: CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid** > **Front/rear camera switching** > **Auto** or **Manual**.

Auto - This view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into reverse. This view in front of the vehicle (**Front** mode) is displayed automatically when you shift into the forward gears.

Manual - When you switch the system on, the view behind the vehicle (**Rear** mode) is always ▶

displayed and it does not switch to the **Front** mode when a forward gear is selected.

Adjusting the display and the warning tones

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

The display and warning tones can be adjusted in the Infotainment.

▸ Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)*** **Systems** control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**.

Display

On* - An optical display is shown for the parking system plus, a rearview camera image is shown for the rearview camera*.

Off - When the parking system is switched off, only audible signals are given.

Signal tones

Front volume - volume for the front area

Rear volume - volume for the rear area

Front frequency - frequency for the front area

Rear frequency - frequency for the rear area

Music volume during nav. prompts - the volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on.

The newly selected level is demonstrated briefly by the sound generator.

Tips

– The warning tones can also be adjusted directly by the visual display or the picture from the camera. Simply press the **Settings** control button.
– Changed settings are activated when the parking system is switched on again.
– The settings for volume and frequency are automatically saved and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral camera

There is an error in the system if the LED in the P button is blinking and you hear a continuous alarm for a few seconds after switching on the parking system or when the parking system is already activated. If the error is not corrected before you switch off the ignition, the LED in the P button will blink the next time you switch on the parking system by shifting into reverse.

Parking system plus*

If a sensor is faulty, the P symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓐ and Ⓑ are displayed ⇨ *page 109, fig. 116*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas Ⓒ and Ⓓ are displayed. There is also a system malfunction if all segments around the vehicle are red or if no segments are displayed.

Peripheral cameras*

There is a system malfunction if the symbol appears and the corresponding display area is shown in blue. The camera is not working in this area.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Trailer hitch

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/peripheral cameras and trailer hitch

For vehicles using the trailer socket, the parking system rear sensors are not activated when you shift into reverse gear or when you press the P button. This results in the following restrictions.

Parking system plus*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to trailer mode. ▸

Rearview camera*/peripheral cameras*

There is no distance warning for the rear. The front sensors remain activated. The visual display switches to trailer mode. The rearview camera image will not show the orientation lines and the blue surfaces.

Tips

Trailer hitches that are not installed at the factory may cause the parking system to malfunction or they may restrict its function.

Intelligent Technology

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations such as the vehicle oversteering and understeering or the wheels are spinning. The vehicle is stabilized by applying the brakes or reducing engine torque. As soon as the ESC is actively regulating, the indicator light blinks in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist system

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. In vehicles with adaptive cruise control*, the brake assist system is more sensitive if the distance detected to the vehicle driving ahead is too small. On vehicles with activated and functioning night vision assist*, the brake assist system can respond more sensitively if there is a warning.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces engine power when the drive wheels begin spinning and adapts the force to the road conditions. This makes it easier to start, accelerate and drive up hills.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to a wheel that starts spinning and transfers the drive power to the other driving wheel or wheels (if the vehicle is equipped with all wheel drive*). This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still working correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Steering recommendation

The ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle by changing the steering torque.

In vehicles with dynamic steering*, ESC also helps to stabilize the steering in critical situations.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. The front wheel on the inside of the curve or both wheels on the inside of the curve are braked selectively as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The “automatic post-collision braking system” can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision above a certain vehicle speed, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if:

– the driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– the braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system, or
– the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle electrical system are not functioning.

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt ▶

you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. The ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions - there is still a risk of accidents!
– Press the accelerator pedal carefully when accelerating on even, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels are equipped with identical tires. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Switching on/off

ESC turns on automatically when you start the engine.

Fig. 139 Center console: OFF button

The following examples are unusual situations where it may make sense to switch sport mode on in order to allow the wheels to spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow or on loose ground
– Driving with snow chains

ESC levels

	Sport mode on	Sport mode off
Behavior	The ESC and ASR stabilization functions are limited ⇨ ⚠.	The full stabilization function of the ESC and ASR is available again.
Operation	Press the OFF button.	Press the OFF button again.
Indicator lights	turns on.	turns off.
Messages	**Stabilization control (ESC): Sport Warning! Reduced stability**	**Stabilization control (ESC): On**

WARNING

– Only switch sport mode on when your driving abilities and the traffic situation permit, because there is a risk of sliding.
– The stabilization function is limited when sport mode is switched on. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces.

Tips

Sport mode cannot be switched on if the cruise control system* or adaptive cruise control* is switched on.

Braking

New brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first.

Wear

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. This is especially true if you are driving frequently in the city and on curves or with a sporty driving style.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Effect of water and road salt

In certain situations, for example after driving through water, in heavy rain, after overnight condensation or after washing your car, the braking effect can be reduced by moisture or ice on the brake rotors and brake pads. The brakes must be “dried” first with a few careful brake applications.

At higher speeds and with the windshield wipers turned on, the brake pads press against the brake rotors for a short amount of time. This action, which is not felt by the driver, happens at regular intervals and ensures a better reaction time for the brakes in wet weather.

The braking effect can also be reduced if you are driving on salted roads and you do not apply the brakes for long periods of time. The layer of salt on the brake rotors and pads must be worn off first when the brakes are applied.

Corrosion

Leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, low mileage and avoiding heavy braking can contribute to corrosion on the brake rotors and to dirty brake pads.

If you usually avoid heavy braking or if there is corrosion present, occasional heavy braking at high speeds is recommended to clean the brake rotors and pads ⇨ ⚠.

Brake system malfunction

if you notice that the brake pedal travel has *suddenly* increased, then a brake circuit in the dual-circuit brake system may have malfunctioned. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the problem corrected. On the way there, drive with reduced speed and keep in mind that you will need a longer distance to stop and you will need to press the brake pedal harder.

Low brake fluid level

When the brake fluid level is low, malfunctions in the brake system may occur. The brake fluid level is electronically monitored.

Brake booster

The brake booster amplifies the pressure you apply to the brake pedal. It only works when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users. This increases the risk of an accident.
- Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
- New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 mi (400 km). They must be “broken in” first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.
- Certain weather and operating conditions such as driving through water, driving in heavy rain or driving after washing your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the brakes. In the winter, ice may build up on the brake pads, rotors and drums. Check ▶

these components by braking carefully. Applying the brakes carefully several times dries the brakes and removes ice build-up.
– The efficiency of the brakes can also be impaired by driving for long stretches on roads covered with salt without using the brakes. You can remove salt deposits from the brake rotors and pads by carefully applying the brakes several times.
– If the front spoiler is damaged or you install another spoiler, make sure the front wheel brakes are ventilated properly. Otherwise, the brake system could overheat, which reduces their effectiveness.
– Failure of a brake circuit impairs braking performance, which increases braking distance. Avoid driving the vehicle and have it towed it to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– If the brake booster is not working, you will have to press much harder on the brake pedal to compensate for the lack of the booster.

Note

– Never let the brakes “rub” by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
– Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and relieves the brakes. If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Tips

– If the brake booster is not working, you must press the brake pedal with much more force than normal.
– If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the front wheels is not interrupted. Otherwise the brake system can become too hot.

Electromechanical steering, dynamic steering

The electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements.

Power steering adapts *electronically* based on the vehicle speed.

Indicator lights and messages

Do not drive vehicle: steering defective

If this indicator light turns on and stays on and this message appears, the power steering may have failed.

Stop the vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do **not** continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: System fault You can continue driving

If the indicator light turns on and the message appears, the steering wheel may be more difficult to move or more sensitive than usual. The steering wheel may also be at an angle when driving straight.

Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Dynamic steering: Initializing

If the indicator light is blinking and this message appears, dynamic steering* is being initialized. The steering wheel will be easy to move after starting the engine. Re-initialization might be necessary if the steering wheel was moved hard to the left and right while the vehicle was not moving. The display turns off if the initialization was successful.

Tips

– If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, you may continue driving.
– The dynamic steering stability systems ⇨ *page 120* are not available in the event of a system malfunction.

– For additional information on dynamic steering, refer to ⇨ *page 104*.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

In all wheel drive, all four wheels are powered.

General information

In all wheel drive, the driving power is divided between all four wheels. This happens automatically depending on your driving behavior as well as the current road conditions. Also see ⇨ *page 120, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)*.

A center differential distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which activates when driving through curves ⇨ *page 120*. With the sport differential*, power distribution to the rear wheels is variable and can be adjusted with drive select ⇨ *page 104*.

The all wheel drive concept is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

Winter tires

By using all wheel drive, your vehicle has good forward motion with standard tires in winter conditions. However, in winter we recommend using winter or all season tires on all four wheels, because this will improve the braking effect.

Snow chains

If there are snow chain laws, snow chains must also be used on vehicles with all wheel drive ⇨ *page 226, Snow chains*.

Replacing tires

For vehicles with all wheel drive, only wheels with the same rolling circumference should be used. Avoid using tires with different tread depths ⇨ *page 217, New tires or wheels*.

Offroad vehicle?

Your Audi is not an offroad vehicle - there is not enough ground clearance. For this reason, avoid difficult terrain.

⚠ WARNING

– Also, in vehicles with all wheel drive, adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not be tempted to accelerate to a high speed when the road is slippery, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine does not rev higher suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. For this reason, adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Energy management

The starting ability is optimized

The energy management system manages the electrical energy distribution and optimizes the availability of electrical energy for starting the engine.

When a vehicle with a conventional energy system is not driven for a long time, the vehicle battery is drained by equipment (for example, the immobilizer). In certain circumstances, there could may not be enough energy to start the engine.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life. ▶

The energy management system Is made up of **battery diagnosis**, **idling current management**, and **dynamic energy management**.

Battery diagnosis

The battery diagnosis determines the vehicle battery charge level. The sensors detect the battery, the battery current, and the battery temperature. The current charge level and the performance of the vehicle battery are determined based on this.

Idling current management

The idling current management decreases the energy used while parked. With the engine switched off, it manages the energy distribution to the different electrical components. Data from the battery diagnosis is taken into account for this.

Depending on the vehicle battery charge level, electrical equipment is switched off one item after the other to prevent the vehicle battery from draining and to maintain the starting ability.

Dynamic energy management

While driving, dynamic energy management distributes the appropriate amount of energy to the electrical equipment. It controls the battery charge level so that the amount of energy is not greater than the amount being generated in order to maintain an optimal vehicle battery charge level.

Tips

- Energy management cannot overcome the laws of physics. Note that the charge level and length of the vehicle battery life are limited.
- When the starting ability is endangered, the indicator light turns on ⇨ *page 14*.

What you should know

Maintaining the starting ability is the highest priority.

A lot of stress is placed on the vehicle battery when driving short distances, during city driving, and at cold times of the year. A lot of energy is used but little is generated. It is also critical when the engine is not running but electrical equipment is switched on. In this case, energy is used but none is generated.

In situations like this, energy management will actively regulate the distribution of energy.

Long periods without use

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

With the engine switched off

The vehicle battery will drain if you use Infotainment functions such as listening to the radio while the engine is switched off.

The vehicle's ability to start may be impaired by the energy use, a message will appear in the Infotainment system display.

The message indicates that the system will switch off automatically soon. If you would like to continue using the functions, you must start the engine.

With the engine running

Although electrical energy is generated while driving, the vehicle battery can drain. This can happen if little energy is generated but much is used, and the charge level of the vehicle battery is not optimal.

To restore the balance of energy, components that require large amounts of energy are temporarily scaled back or switched off. Heating systems in particular require a great deal of energy. If you notice, for example, that the seat heating* or rear window defogger is not working, then it has been temporarily reduced or switched off. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored. ▶

4G0012721BB

In addition, you may notice that the idle speed has slightly increased. That is normal and no cause for concern. By increasing the idling speed, the additional required energy will be generated and the vehicle battery will be charged.

Notice about data recorded by the Event Data Recorder and vehicle control modules

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

– How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
– Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
– How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
– How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDRs installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the owner's consent.

Audi will not access the EDR and/or similar data or give it to others -

– unless the vehicle owner (or lessee if the vehicle has been leased) agrees; or
– upon the official request by the police; or
– upon the order of a court of law or a government agency; or
– for the defense of a lawsuit through the judicial discovery process.
– Audi may also use the data for research about vehicle operation and safety performance or provide the data to a third party for research purposes without identifying the specific vehicle or information about the identity of its owner or lessee and only after the recorded vehicle data has been accessed.

Vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is also equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems, such as engine management, emission control, airbags, and safety belts.

These electronic control modules record data during normal vehicle operation that may be needed by trained technicians for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capability of these modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded). Only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time, or stored when a system fault is detected by a control module. Some of the data stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, or braking, as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash. Stored data can also only be read and downloaded with special equipment that is directly connected to the vehicle. ▶

Tips

Your vehicle may be equipped with Audi connect. Your use of certain Audi connect features requires wireless services that are provided by a third party wireless telecommunications provider. For details regarding how information obtained through Audi connect is collected, processed, transmitted, used, and shared, please see your contract with the wireless telecommunications provider and the "About Audi connect" tab in your vehicle's MMI: MENU button > **Audi connect** > **About Audi connect**.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide variety of accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers should not be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in an accident.

The following is a list of just a few of the safety features in your Audi:

- sophisticated safety belts for driver and all passenger seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats,
- safety belt height adjustment systems for the front seats,
- front airbags,
- knee airbags for the front seats*
- side airbags in the front seats and outer rear seats*,
- side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features,
- special LATCH anchorages for child restraints,
- head restraints for each seating position,
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

Safety is everybody's responsibility!

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 57*, ⇨ *page 56*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height. ▶

- Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.
- Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 50, Seats and storage*.
- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 139*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

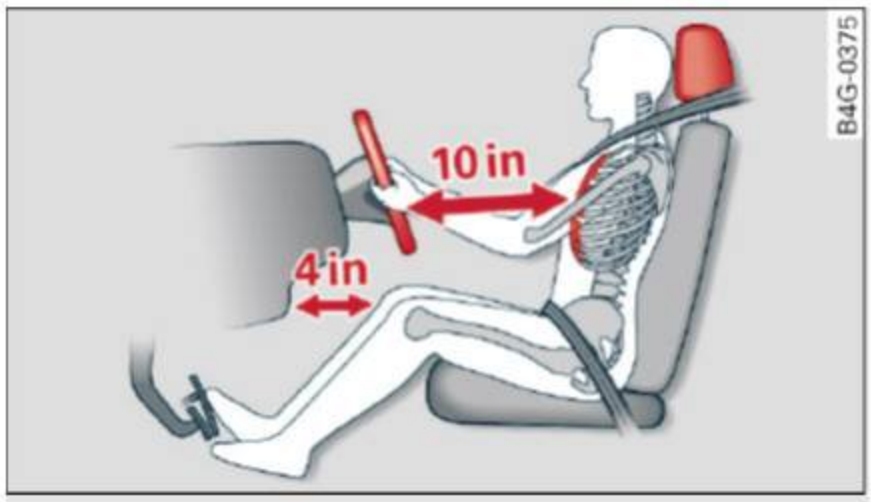

Fig. 140 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 140*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- For adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 142*.

- Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 50*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
- Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
- Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 171*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 147*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 131*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 142*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 50*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.

– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 171*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 147*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

▸ For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 131*.
▸ Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
▸ Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 142*.
▸ Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 171*.

⚠ WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the safety belts are properly positioned on the body and securely latched. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– For adjustable head restraints: always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

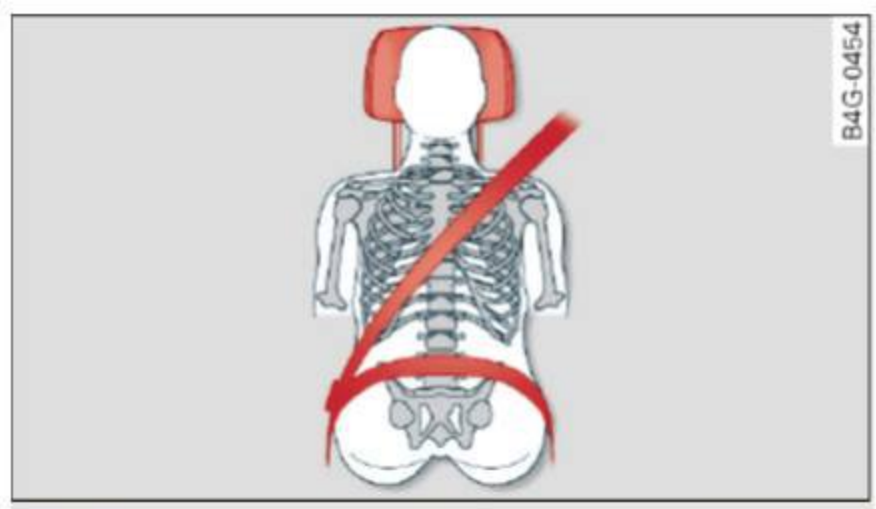

Fig. 141 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *fig. 141*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch.

Adjusting head restraints ⇨ *page 51*.

WARNING

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:

– Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
– Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
– Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
– Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
– Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 171*.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the rear seat
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel
– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area ▶

WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver's and front passenger's footwell

Important safety instructions

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons (children) or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

▸ Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle. ▸

4G0012721BB

– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Storing cargo correctly

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly, changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

▸ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
▸ Always place and properly secure heavy items in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.
▸ Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇨ *page 57*.
▸ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely latched in place.

WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:
– Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
– Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:
– Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  – Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  – Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
– Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently.
– Please observe information on safe driving ⇨ *page 128*.

WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.
– Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
– If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  – Close all windows,
  – Close the power roof*,
  – Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  – Switch off the air recirculation,
  – Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, all windows, the power roof* and the rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.
– After closing the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.

– Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
– Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
– Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Tips

– Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Stale air escapes to the outside through vents in the trim panel. Be sure to keep these slots free and open.
– The tire pressure must correspond to the load. The tire pressure is shown on the tire pressure label. The tire pressure label is located on the driver's side B-pillar. The tire pressure label lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and the tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For recommended tire pressures for normal load conditions, please see chapter ⇨ *page 221*.

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇨ *page 134, Loading the luggage compartment*.

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. Vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10-lb (4.5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.
– Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.
– When the rear seat backrest is folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.
– Never attach a child safety seat tether strap to a tie-down.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Audi of America, Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defects exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and ▶

4G0012721BB

remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact the NHTSA, you may either call:

Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153) or 1-800-424-9393

or you may write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
1200 New Jersey Ave., S.E.
West Building
Washington, DC 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from:

http://www.safercar.gov

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired: Tel.: 1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi pre sense

Preventative passenger protection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Pre sense can initiate steps to protect vehicle occupants in certain dangerous situations. The functions described are available depending on vehicle equipment:

Pre sense basic*

The following functions can be triggered in certain driving situations:

– Tensioning of the safety belts (for example, during heavy braking): the front safety belts have reversible belt tensioners. If a collision does not occur, the safety belts loosen slightly and are ready to trigger again.
– Closing the windows and the sunroof* (for example, when over- or understeering): the windows and the sunroof* close until there is only a small gap open.

The function of the pre sense basic is activated at a speed of 20 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

Drive select: the deployment time is adapted in **Dynamic** mode.

Pre sense front (vehicles with adaptive cruise control*)

Pre sense front contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision with the vehicle ahead is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Braking guard ⇨ *page 93*
– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Pre sense rear (vehicles with side assist*)

Pre sense rear contains the functions of pre sense basic. In addition, the likelihood of a rear-end collision from the vehicle behind is also calculated, within the limits of the system. If the risk of a collision is detected, the following functions can trigger:

– Tensioning of the safety belts
– Closing the windows and the sunroof*

Pre sense plus*

Pre sense plus contains the functions of pre sense front and pre sense rear.

Error message

Audi pre sense: Unavailable

Preventative passenger protection is not available. Drive to your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Pre sense cannot overcome natural physical laws. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– The system can deploy incorrectly.
– Please note that the sensors do not always detect all objects. This increases the risk of a collision.
– Pre sense does not react to people or animals or objects that are crossing the vehicle's path or are difficult to detect ⇨ *page 88*.
– Reflective objects such as guard rails or the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain and ice can affect the function of the radar sensors and the system's ability to detect a collision risk.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. Pre sense can be impaired by this. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– Certain pre sense front functions switch off when sport mode is switched off or when driving in reverse.

- The pre sense functions may not be available if there is a malfunction in the ESC system or the airbag control module.
- The pre sense front/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the adaptive cruise control* system ⇨ *page 95*.
- The pre sense rear/plus functions are not available if there is a malfunction in the side assist* system ⇨ *page 95*.

Safety belts

General information

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

▸ Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.

Number of seats

Your Audi has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger (on USA models only) to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.

Fig. 142 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

▸ Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
▸ Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
▸ Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

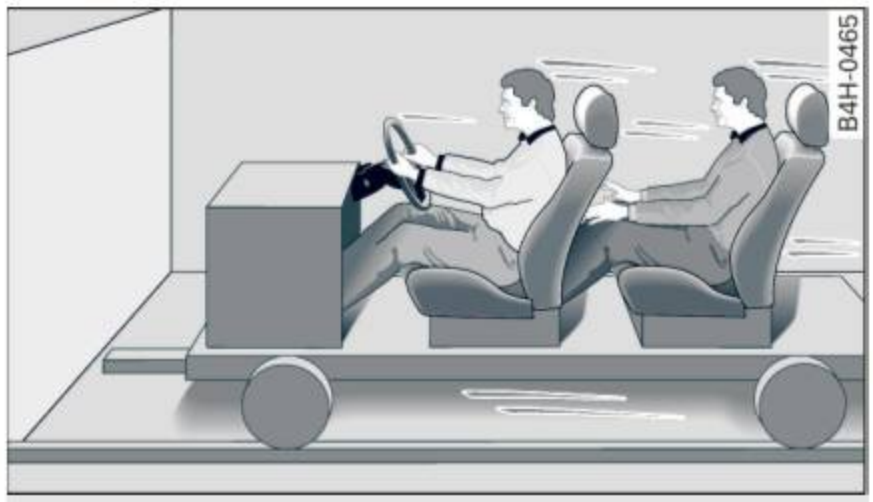

Fig. 143 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall

Fig. 144 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy "kinetic energy."

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be "absorbed" in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 143*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 144*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!

Fig. 145 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward

Fig. 146 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 145*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash. ▶

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 146*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!

Fig. 147 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged. ▶

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table on page 233*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!

Fig. 148 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 50, Seats and storage*.
- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 148*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle. ▶

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated ⇨ *page 145*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 17*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 182*.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 143, Safety belt position*.

- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
- Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 184*.

Tips

For information on safety belt pretensioners, refer to ⇨ *page 145*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

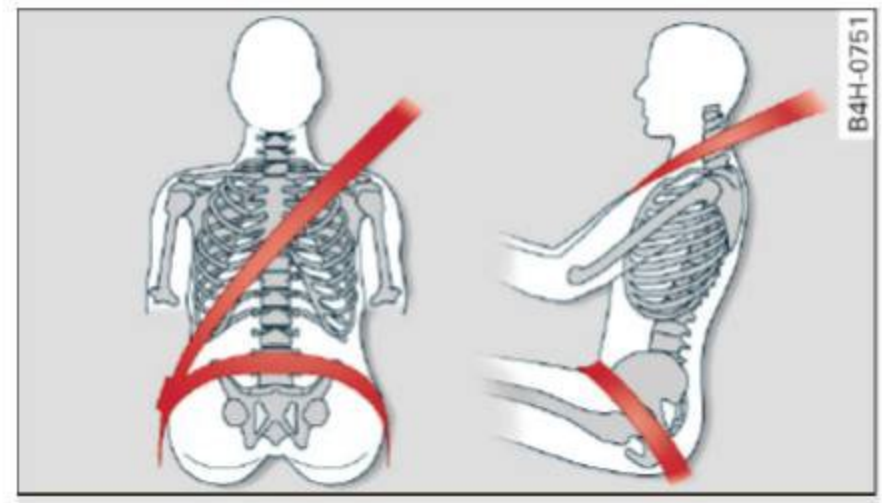

Fig. 149 Safety belt position

Use the height adjustment to change the position of the shoulder belt of the front safety belts.

WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit snugly ⇨ *fig. 149*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 141*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.

Fig. 150 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 143*.

- Adjust the front seat and adjustable head restraint* correctly ⇨ *page 50, Seats and storage*.
- Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 150*, ⇨ ⚠.
- Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 143*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

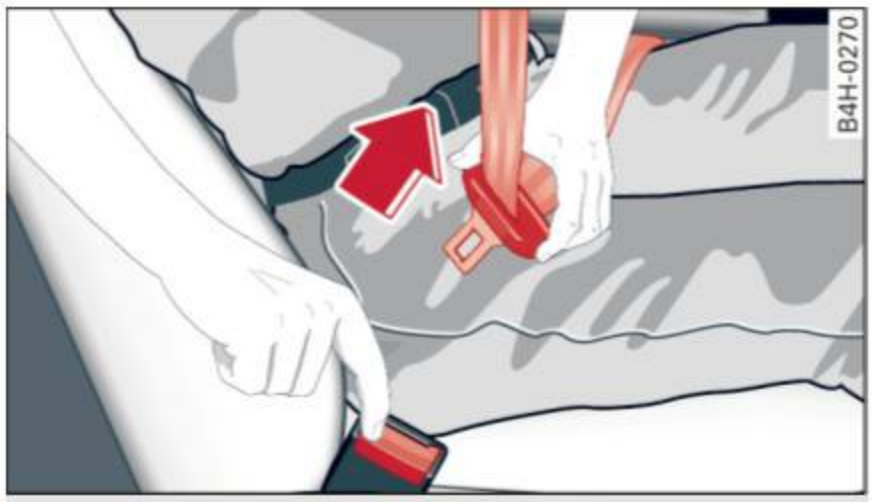

Fig. 151 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 151*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting safety belt height

With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.

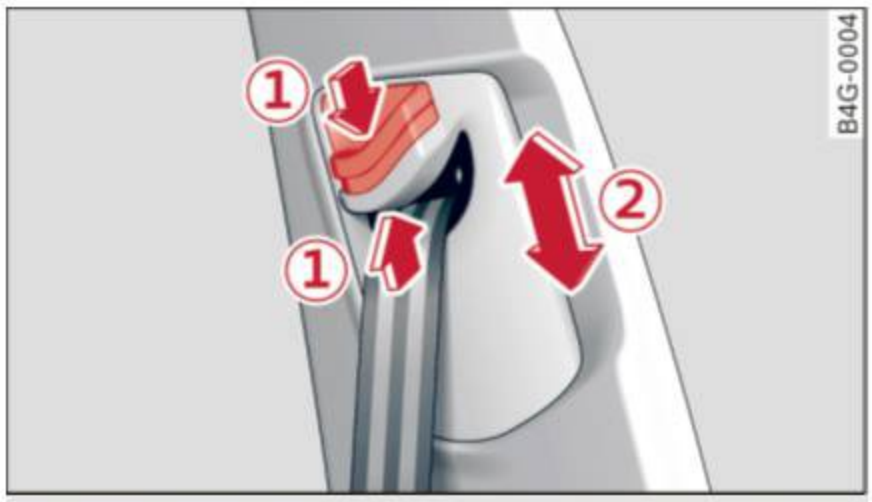

Fig. 152 Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 143*.

- *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 152* ②, or
- *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 141*.

Tips

With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.

– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 141*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In front, side and rear-end collisions above a particular severity and in a rollover, safety belts are tensioned automatically.

Reversible safety belt tensioners

The safety belts on the front seats are equipped with power reversible tensioners. The following functions are available when the driver's/front passenger's safety belts are fastened:

– Automatic tensioners: at the start of a drive, the safety belts automatically adjust to the passenger after a certain time period or vehicle speed. To switch the automatic tensioners off, select the following in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** > **Vehicle settings** > **Seats** > **Driver's seat** or **Passenger's seat** > **Automatic belt tensioner** > **Off**.
– In certain driving situations, the safety belts may tighten with a reversible tensioning function ⇨ *page 137*.
– The safety belts may also tighten with this reversible tensioning function in minor collisions.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

The safety belts are equipped with safety belt pretensioners. The system is activated by sensors in front, side and rear-end collisions of great severity and in a rollover. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack ⇨ ⚠ *in Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner on page 146*. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

WARNING

– It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
– The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

Tips

The pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners can only deploy once.

– The safety belt pretensioners do not deploy in minor frontal, side and rear-end collisions.
– A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
– Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you have your authorized Audi dealer perform this service for you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 129*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 50*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 141*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 171*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 129, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 50*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 171*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

4G0012721BB

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 139*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 142, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 129*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

▸ Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details ▶

about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 171*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for "suppression" for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for "low risk deployment" for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the Safety Standard ⇨ *page 173*.
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 159, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 173*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 159, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*. ▶

4G0012721BB

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 159, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.

▶

- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

Fig. 153 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel

Fig. 154 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. The safety belts for the seats have "pretensioners" that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 153* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 154*. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG".

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
- Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
- Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.

- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
- Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

- Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
- Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
- Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
- Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach then to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
- Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
- Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the „low risk“ option for 3- and 6-year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical one-year old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard ▶

(CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 173, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 173*,
– When a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 173*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 159*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back ▶

4G0012721BB

seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 147*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is ▶

switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 159*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator and control valve inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 159*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 159, fig. 156* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.

- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
- If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.

- If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) in the instrument cluster.
- If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light light will go out.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints* to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 159*. ▶

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 147*.

More important things to know about front airbags

Fig. 155 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
– and for adjustable head restraints: the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 159* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 148*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models):

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

Fig. 156 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 156*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag indicator light AIR BAG (USA models) / (Canada models) will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the ignition is switched on and
– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying ▶

the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag a few seconds after the ignition is switched on and the airbag indicator light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 173*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 148, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion. ▶

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

- take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
- there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

- If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
- Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
- For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
- Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
- All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
- For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  - Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components ▶

must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.

– For safety reasons in severe accidents, the alternator and starter are separated from the vehicle battery with a pyrotechnic circuit interrupter.
  – Work on the pyrotechnic circuit interrupter must only be performed by a qualified technicians who have the experience, information and special tools necessary to perform the work safely.
  – If the vehicle or the circuit interrupter is scrapped, all applicable safety precautions must be followed.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material - special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

– Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
– Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

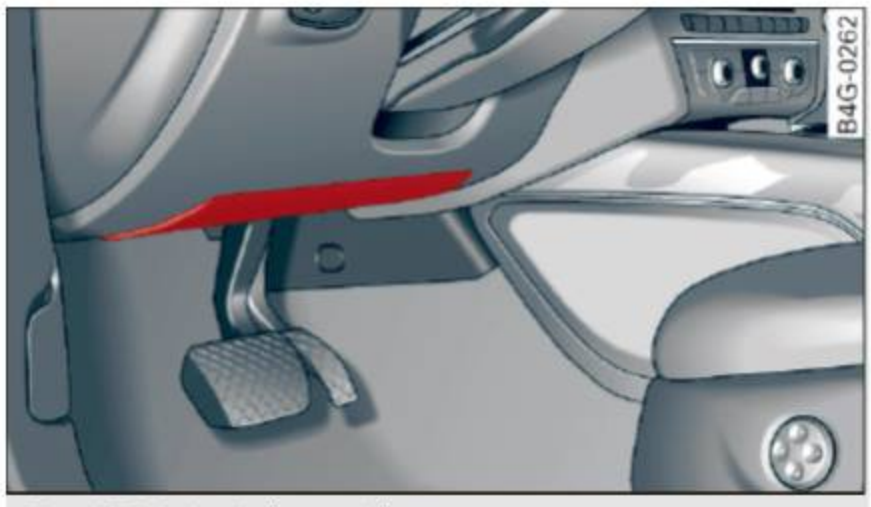

Fig. 157 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 157*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment ▶

threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 157, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 139, General information*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 17*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 157*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.

Fig. 158 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 157, fig. 155*. ▶

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
  - Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
  - Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

Fig. 159 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 159* and the rear backrest facing the doors. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG”.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 139*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 147*, Child safety ⇨ *page 171*.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests and the two airbags* located in the rear backrest
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's, front and rear passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 167, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 139, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together. ▶

WARNING

- Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 167*.
- If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

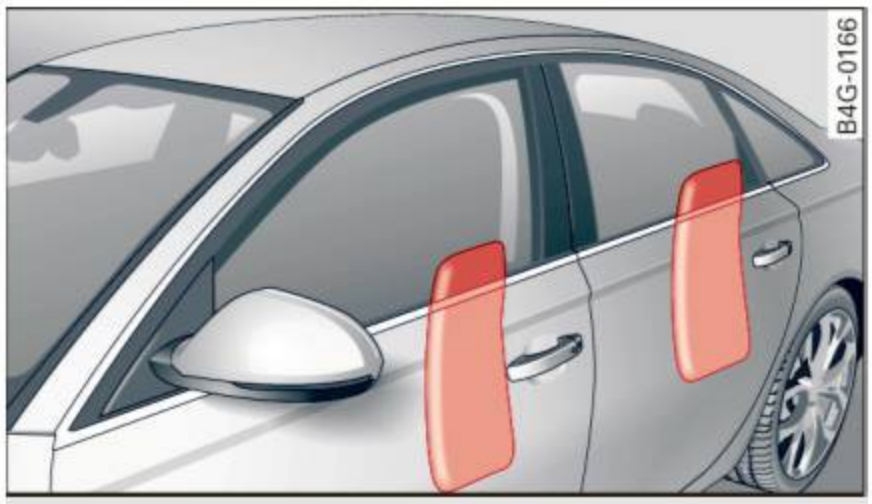

Fig. 160 Inflated side airbags on left side of vehicle, rear side airbag

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked "AIRBAG". It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 160*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy.

- Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
  - Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.
  - Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
  - Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
- Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
- If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
- In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
- Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
- Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
- Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
- Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
- Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

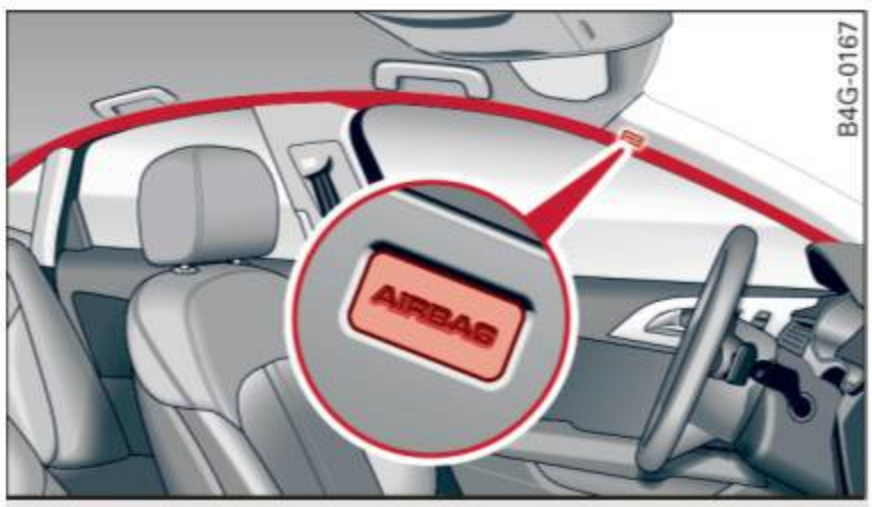

Fig. 161 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 161*. They are identified by the word "AIRBAG" on the windshield frame.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers. ▶

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 169, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 139, General information*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 50, Seats and storage*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 17* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How side curtain airbags work

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

Fig. 162 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 162*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 171*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors.

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 140, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 148*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 175, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on ▶

all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 139, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 147, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 171, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S.National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure ▶

4G0012721BB

that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 177*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 182*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 177*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  – When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  – Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  – Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
– Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  – Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  – The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.

  - The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 139, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 147, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

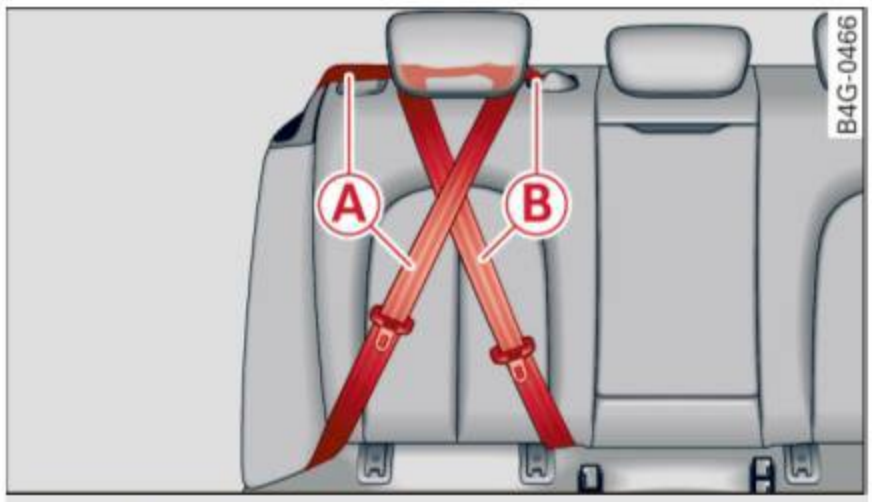

Fig. 163 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. (A) - outer rear safety belt, (B) - center rear safety belt*

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbings (A) and (B)* behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 163*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a "clicking" sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.
– Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

Child seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.

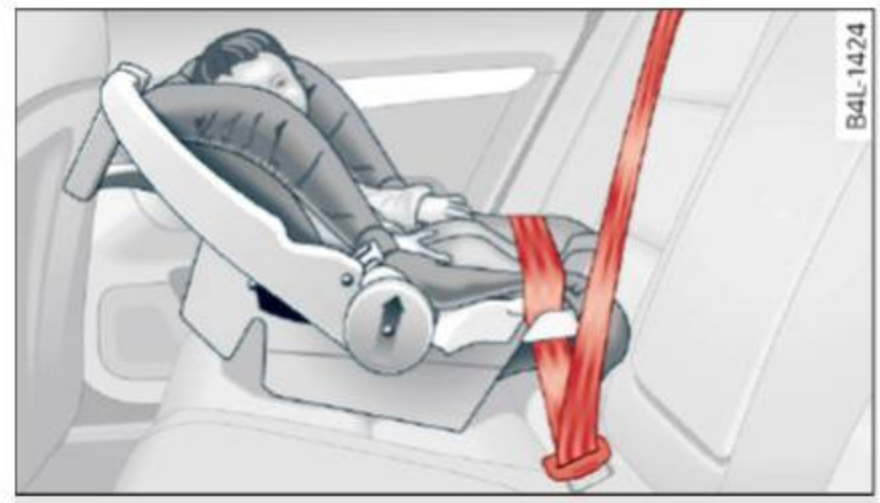

Fig. 164 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 182* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 177*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant ▸

seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 164*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 148, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 139, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 147, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 171, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

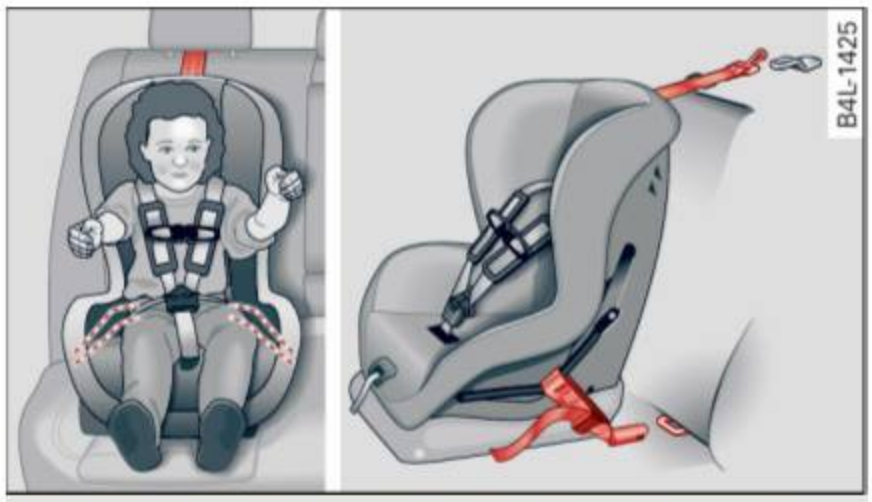

Fig. 165 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

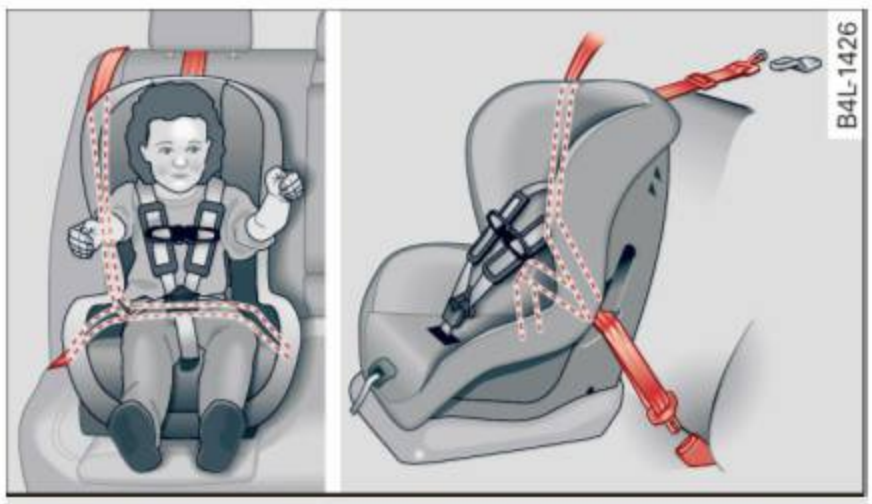

Fig. 166 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 182* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 182*.
- If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 188*.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 177*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 165* and ⇨ *fig. 166*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.

- For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 52*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 139, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 147, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 171, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

- Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.

Fig. 167 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 177*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury.

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's ▶

body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 139*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 52*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 159, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 139, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 147, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 171, Important information*.

Securing child seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, ▶

should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
- Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
- If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
- It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 171*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 148, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

- Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 159, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
- An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
- After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints: ▶

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:
– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.
– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.

– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 171*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 148, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.
– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 171*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 148, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

In the United States, the combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the LATCH system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

In other countries the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or ▸

push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Location

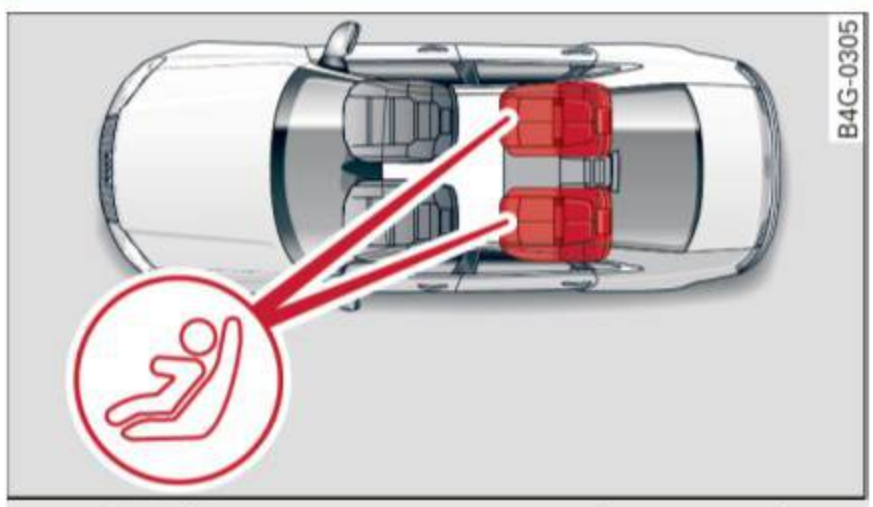

Fig. 168 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.

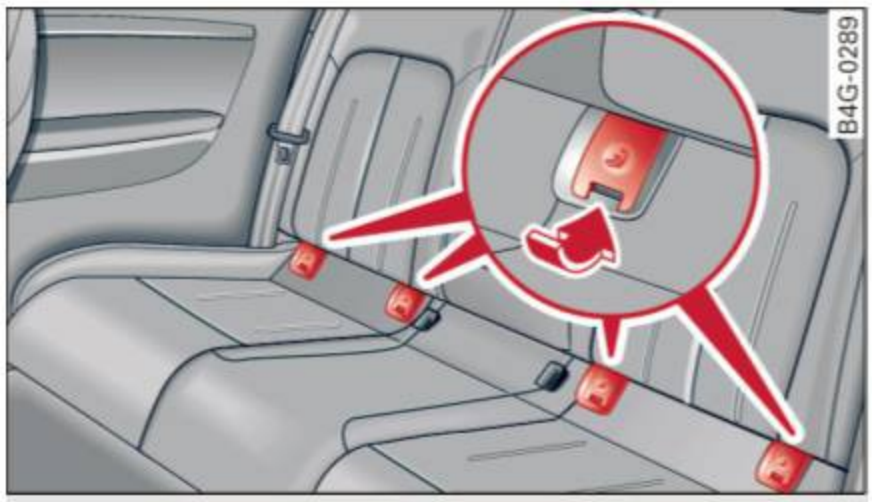

Fig. 169 Lower anchorages, covers marked

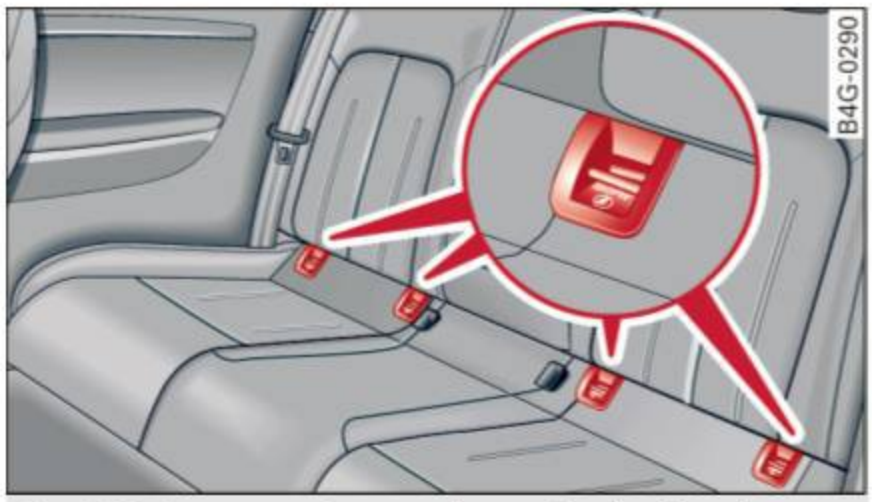

Fig. 170 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 169*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 169* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 170*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system. ▶

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.
- Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
- Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

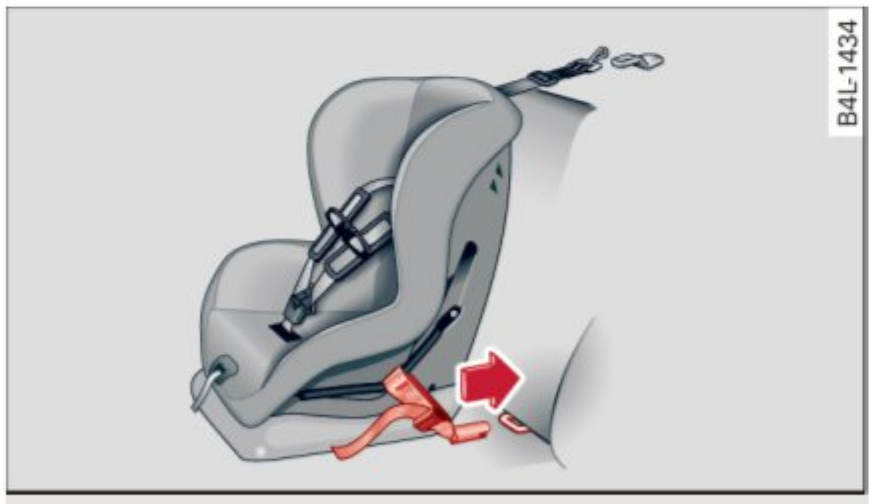

Fig. 171 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 171*.
- Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.
- These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
- Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
- Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.
- Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 171, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps

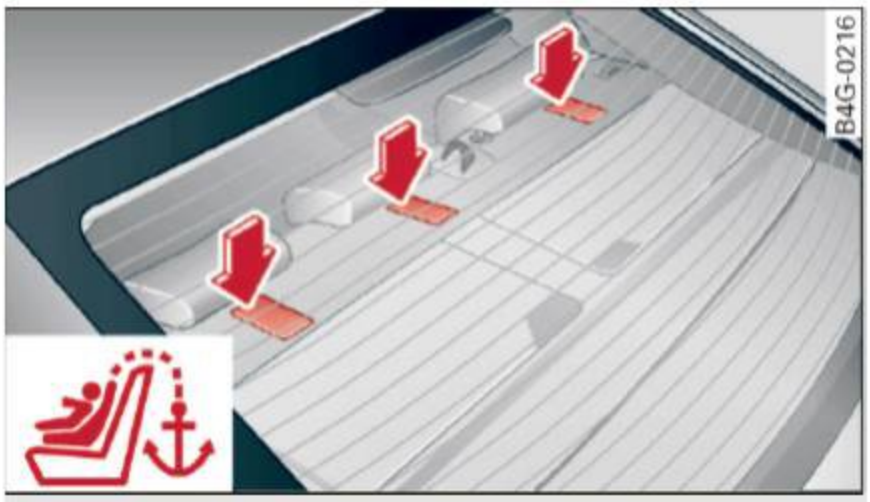

Fig. 172 Tether anchors: recess flaps behind the rear seat-backs

The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located in recesses in the rear window shelf ⇨ *fig. 172*

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

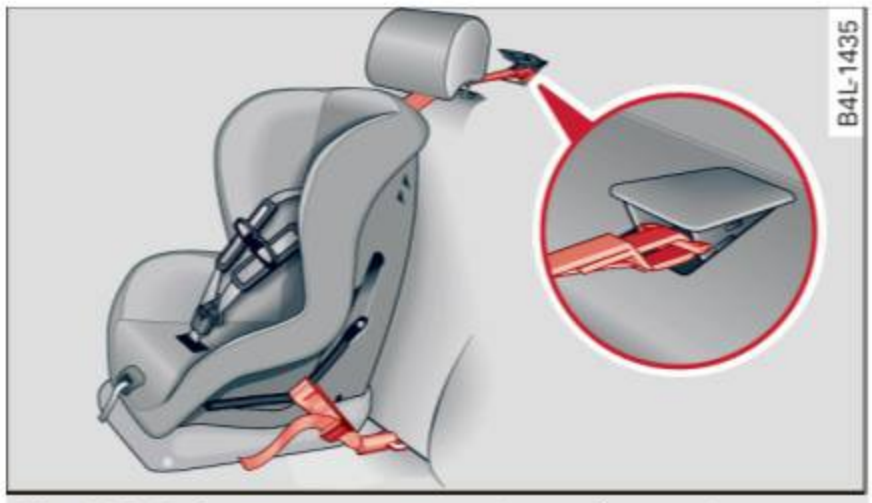

Fig. 173 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting

Installing the tether strap

- Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint ⇨ *fig. 173* (raise the head restraint if necessary). For child restraints with V-tether straps, always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- Tilt the recess flap up to expose the anchor bracket.
- Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage. ▶

- Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

- Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
http://www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Relations
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

Checking and Filling

Gasoline

Fuel supply

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

Using the right fuel helps keep the environment clean and prevents engine damage.

Fuel recommendation

The fuel recommended for your vehicle is **unleaded premium** grade gasoline. Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (95 RON). For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can also be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI or RON.

Your vehicle may also be operated using unleaded regular gasoline with a minimum octane rating of 87 AKI/91 RON. However, using 87 AKI/91 RON octane fuel will slightly reduce engine performance.

Use unleaded gasoline only. Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

For more information on refueling your vehicle, see ⇨ *page 192*.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by premature ignition and detonation. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

Gasoline most commonly used in the United States and Canada has the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

– Premium Grade: 91 - 96 AKI

– Regular Grade: 87 - 90 AKI

Explanation of the abbreviations:

AKI = **A**nti **K**nock **I**ndex = (R+M)/2 = (RON+MON)/2

RON = **R**esearch **O**ctane **N**umber

MON = **M**otor **O**ctane **N**umber.

Note

– Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
– Do **not** use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to control exhaust emissions.

Blended gasoline

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

Use of gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether)

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol.
– Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol)

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must not contain more than 15% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE

– Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher.
– Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasoline grades are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you ▶

fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Methanol fuels which do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the specified criteria in this chapter.
- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified are not the responsibility of Audi and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.
- If you experience a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems due to the use of one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel.

Gasoline additives

A major concern among many auto manufacturers is carbon deposit build-up caused by the type of gasoline you use.

Although gasoline grades differ from one manufacturer to another, they have certain things in common. All gasoline grades contain substances that can cause deposits to collect on vital engine parts, such as fuel injectors and intake valves. Although most gasoline brands include additives to keep engine and fuel systems clean, they are not equally effective.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For more information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, please go to the official website (www.toptiergas.com).

After an extended period of using inadequate fuels, carbon deposit build-ups can rob your engine of peak performance.

Note

Damage or malfunction due to poor fuel quality is not covered by the Audi New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Diesel fuel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Always use ULSD (Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel) No. 2. The ULSD No. 2 meets the ASTM D975.

Diesel fuel with concentrations of biodiesel higher than 5 % such as B11, B20 or B100 are strictly prohibited.

Service station fuel pumps are labeled with the correct fuel information for easy recognition by the user. If the diesel fuel pump is not labeled ask the station operator what fuel is being dispensed before filling up your vehicle.

ULSD No. 2 may not be available outside the USA and Canada. Be sure to check before traveling to other countries.

ULSD No. 2 can become thicker in very cold temperatures, and this can impair the engine's starting and running. Depending on the season, gas stations provide ULSD No. 2 that flows better in cold temperatures so that you can continue operating your vehicle as usual.

Note

- Your vehicle's diesel engine was designed soley for use with ULSD No. 2. Therefore, never use gasoline, heating oil, other fuels or flow improvers. These contain substances that will severely damage the fuel system and the engine. Such damage will not be covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- If you put any amount of incorrect fuel in the fuel tank, do not start the engine under any circumstances. Immediately contact the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. ▶

These fuels contain substances that can severely damage the fuel system and the engine if the engine is started.

Refueling

Fuel filler neck

The fuel filler neck is located on the right rear side panel behind the fuel filler flap.

If the power locking system should fail, you can still open the flap manually - for detailed instructions see ⇨ *page 194*.

You can find the fuel tank capacity of your vehicle in ⇨ *page 257*.

The label on the inside of the fuel filler flap tells you the correct fuel for your vehicle. For more information about fuel specifications, see ⇨ *page 190*.

Your vehicle fuel tank has an onboard refuelling vapor recovery system. This feature helps to prevent fuel vapors from escaping from the tank and polluting the environment while you refuel your vehicle. In order to fill the tank properly while protecting the environment, please follow this refueling procedure carefully.

WARNING

Under normal operating conditions, never carry additional fuel containers in your car. Gas canisters and other containers used to transport fuel can be dangerous. Such containers, full or empty, may leak and could cause a fire in a collision. If you must transport fuel to use for your lawn mower, snow blower, etc., be very careful and always observe local and state laws regarding the use, transportation and storage of such fuel containers. Make certain the container meets industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852 - 86).

Note

Never drive your vehicle until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. Gasoline could enter the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.

Fueling procedure

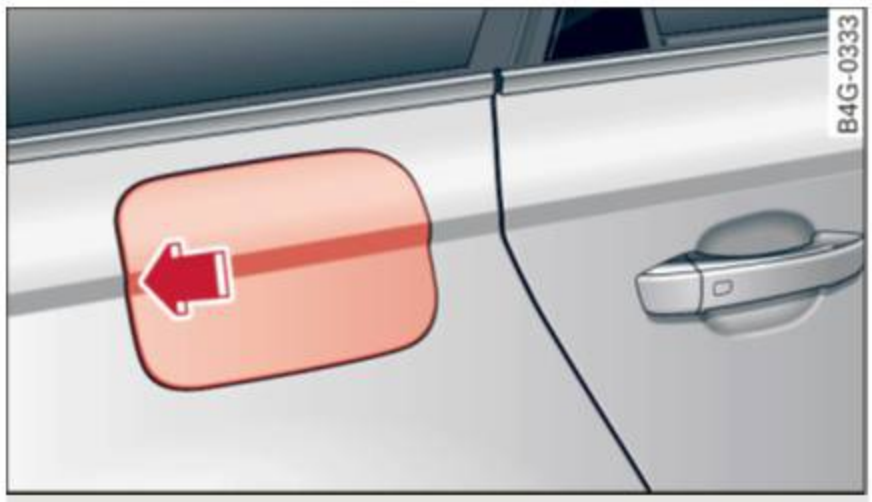

Fig. 174 Right rear side of the vehicle: opening the fuel filler door

Fig. 175 Fuel filler door with attached fuel cap

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

Opening the fuel cap

- Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open ⇨ *fig. 174*.
- Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
- Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 175*.

Closing the fuel cap

- Screw the tank cap on to the right on the filler neck until it cannot turn any farther.
- Then press on the left side of the tank door until it latches.

Once the pump nozzle switches off, the fuel tank is "full". Do not fill the tank more. Otherwise the expansion space in the tank will be filled.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 190*. ▶

The fuel tank capacity of your vehicle is listed in the **Technical Data** section ⇨ *page 257*.

To avoid fuel spilling or evaporating from the fuel tank always close fuel cap properly and completely. An improperly closed fuel filler cap may also cause the MIL lamp ⇨ *page 25* to come on.

WARNING

Not paying attention when fueling or handling fuel incorrectly can lead to fires, explosions or serious injuries.

- Fuel ignites easily and can cause serious burns and other injuries.
- If you do not switch the engine off when fueling and/or do not insert the fuel nozzle completely into the tank opening, fuel can leak out or run over. Leaked fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- Do not use the telephone while fueling. The electromagnetic rays can cause sparks, which can ignite fuel vapors and start a fire.
- Do not sit in your vehicle while fueling. If you must make an exception and enter your vehicle again while fueling, close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the fuel nozzle. Static electricity can create sparks, which can ignite vapors when fueling.
- Do not smoke or have an open flame in the area when fueling your vehicle or filling a fuel container because this increases the risk of an explosion.
- For your safety, carrying fuel containers in your vehicle is not recommended. Whether full or empty, the container can leak and cause a fire in the event of an accident.
- If you must make an exception and transport a fuel container, note the following:
  - Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is in or on the vehicle. Static electricity is discharged when filling which can cause the fuel vapors to ignite and increases the risk of an explosion.
  - Always place a fuel container on the ground before filling.
  - Always hold the fuel nozzle completely in the fuel container when filling.
  - If the fuel container is made of metal, the fuel nozzle must always be in contact with the container when filling it with fuel. This prevents static electricity from discharging.
  - Never spill fuel in the vehicle or the luggage compartment. Evaporated fuel is explosive and increases the risk of serious injury or death.
  - Follow legal requirements when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - Make sure the fuel container conforms to industry standards (ANSI/ASTM F852-86).

Note

- Remove spilled fuel from vehicle paint immediately, because it can damage paint.
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel will enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines

If the fuel tank runs completely empty, the ignition must remain switched on for at least 30 seconds after refueling before starting the engine. It may take longer than usual for the engine to start, even up to a minute. This is because the air must first bleed out of the fuel system when starting the engine.

For the sake of the environment

Do not overfill the fuel tank, otherwise fuel can leak out when the vehicle is warming up.

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines

Diesel vehicles are equipped with a misfueling guard [1]. It allows the vehicle to be fueled only with a diesel fuel pump nozzle. ▶

– A worn or damaged nozzle or a nozzle that is too small may not be able to open the diesel misfueling guard. If this is the case, try turning the nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different fuel pump, or see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
– The misfueling guard does not open when adding fuel from a fuel container. You can bypass it by adding the diesel fuel slowly.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system is faulty, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.

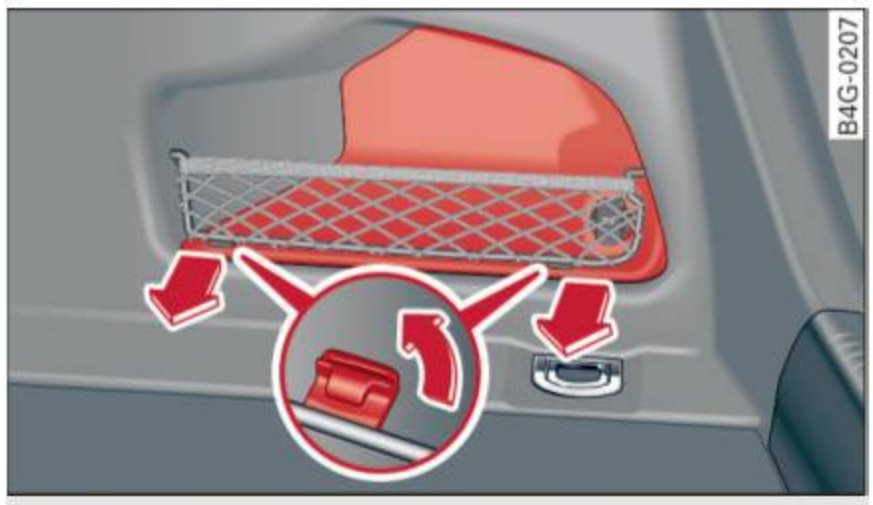

Fig. 176 Right side trim in the luggage compartment: removing the trim

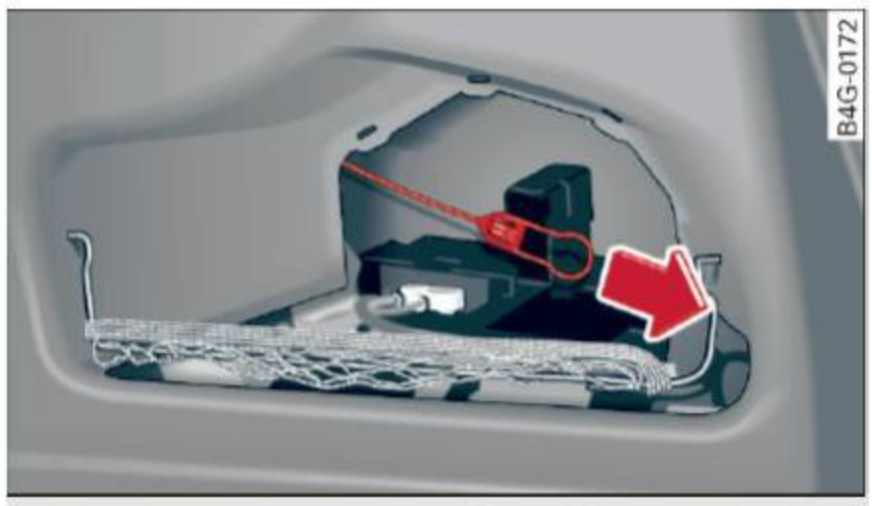

Fig. 177 Luggage compartment: fuel filler door emergency release

Removing the side trim

▸ To remove the right side trim, first remove the retainer from the mounts Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 176*.
▸ Turn both locking mechanisms 90° to the left using a coin or a similar object and remove the locking mechanisms.
▸ Tilt the retainer upward and pull the trim out. Lay the trim down on its side, because there is an electrical wire for the socket* on the back.

Fuel filler door emergency release

▸ Loosen the strap from its bracket and pull on it ⇨ *fig. 177* ⇨ ⓘ. The fuel filler door is released.
▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 192, fig. 174*.

Note

Only pull on the loop until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. Otherwise you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

General information

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

In vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system before a nitrogen oxide catalytic converter to reduce nitrogen emissions. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). AdBlue is used in the following.

The AdBlue is carried in a separate tank in the vehicle. The AdBlue usage accounts for approximately 0.5% to 2.5% of the diesel fuel that is used.

When a message about refilling the AdBlue appears in the instrument cluster display, you must refill the AdBlue yourself or have it refilled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ *page 195*.

Tips

– The instrument cluster display indicates the distance remaining that can be driven ⇨ *page 195*. If the AdBlue tank is completely empty, the engine will not start again after the ignition is switched off. ▸

1) Market-specific

– AdBlue is required by law to operate this vehicle.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

The display indicates if the AdBlue level is low or if there is a system malfunction.

AdBlue level low

You will be informed if the AdBlue in the tank drops below a certain level.

Please refill AdBlue. Range x mi (km)

This message appears when there is only enough AdBlue left to drive the distance indicated in the driver information system. Fill the AdBlue.

AdBlue Refill AdBlue! Cannot start engine in x mi (x km)! See owner's manual

This message appears when there is only enough AdBlue left to drive the distance indicated in the driver information system. Fill the AdBlue. Otherwise the engine will not start again if you stop it once the distance indicated has been driven. You can also check the remaining distance in the on-board computer*.

AdBlue Refill AdBlue! No restart! See owner's manual

This message appears when the AdBlue tank is empty. Fill the AdBlue. Otherwise you will not be able to start the engine again once you stop it.

The AdBlue must be refilled when the amount in the tank has reached the minimum level ⇨ *page 195, Filling AdBlue*.

Incorrect filling/system malfunction

A message appears if the AdBlue tank was filled with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system has detected that the tank was filled incorrectly, or if there is a system malfunction.

AdBlue AdBlue: system fault. No restart in x mi (x km) See owner's manual

This message appears when it is only possible to drive the distance indicated in the driver information system. Drive to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. Otherwise the engine will not start again if you stop it once the distance indicated has been driven.

AdBlue AdBlue: System fault No restart! See owner's manual

This message appears if the system has detected that the tank was filled incorrectly or that there is a malfunction. Drive immediately to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected. Otherwise you will not be able to start the engine again once you stop it.

Filling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

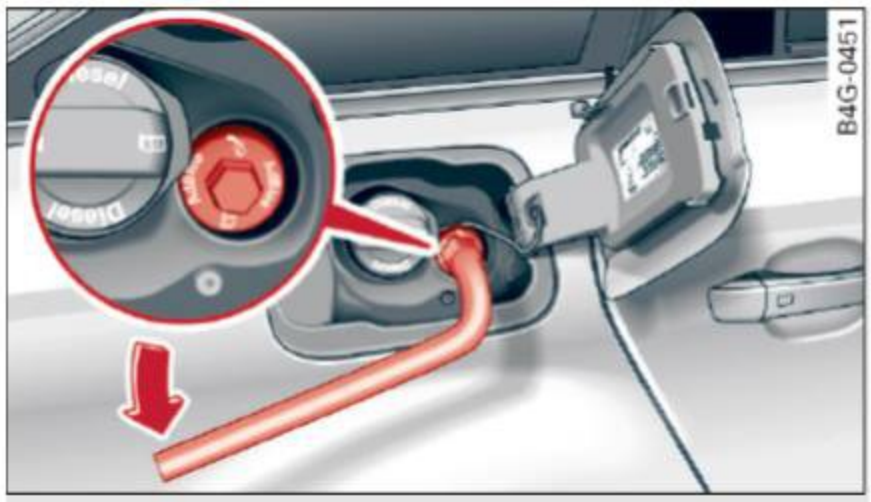

Fig. 178 Right rear side of the vehicle: removing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue tank opening is located near the diesel tank opening. Add at least 1.5 gallons (5.7 liters) of AdBlue. This is the minimum amount required to ensure the system detects the refilling and to start the engine. You can add a maximum of 4.5 gallons (17 liters).

Requirement: the request to add AdBlue must appear in the instrument cluster display.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Open the tank filler door ⇨ *page 192*.
- Turn the cap on the filler neck counter-clockwise using the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit to remove it ⇨ *fig. 178*.
- Fill the AdBlue using a bottle ⇨ *page 196* or a canister ⇨ *page 196*. ▶

WARNING

AdBlue can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.

Note

- Only use AdBlue that conforms to the standard ISO 22241-1. Do not mix any additives with the AdBlue and do not dilute it with water.
- Do not add AdBlue to the diesel tank or add diesel fuel to the AdBlue tank. Do not start the engine under any circumstances if the wrong fuel is filled in the tank. There is a risk of damaging the fuel tank system and the engine. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- AdBlue attacks surfaces such as painted vehicle components, plastic and carpet. Remove the fluid as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water. If the AdBlue has already crystallized, use warm water and a sponge. AdBlue residue that is not removed will crystallize and can damage the affected surface.
- Do not store refill bottles or canisters permanently in the vehicle. If the container leaks, the escaping AdBlue could damage the vehicle interior.
- Do not allow AdBlue to come into contact with clothing. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water.

Tips

Follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for use and storage.

Refilling AdBlue using a bottle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- Remove the cap from the refill bottle ⇨ ⚠ *in Filling AdBlue on page 196*, ⇨ (!) *in Filling AdBlue on page 196*.
- Position the bottle on the filler tube and turn the bottle clockwise until it stops turning.
- Press lightly against the bottom of the bottle to empty it. Continue pressing the bottom of the bottle until it is empty or until fluid stops flowing into the tank.
- Remove the bottle and seal the filler neck ⇨ *page 197, Completing AdBlue refill*.

Note

Only use refill bottles that are approved for your vehicle. Using other systems can cause AdBlue to leak.

Tips

- You can obtain refill bottles from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- A permitted refill bottle contains approximately 0.5 gallon (1.9 liters) of AdBlue.

Refilling AdBlue using a canister

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

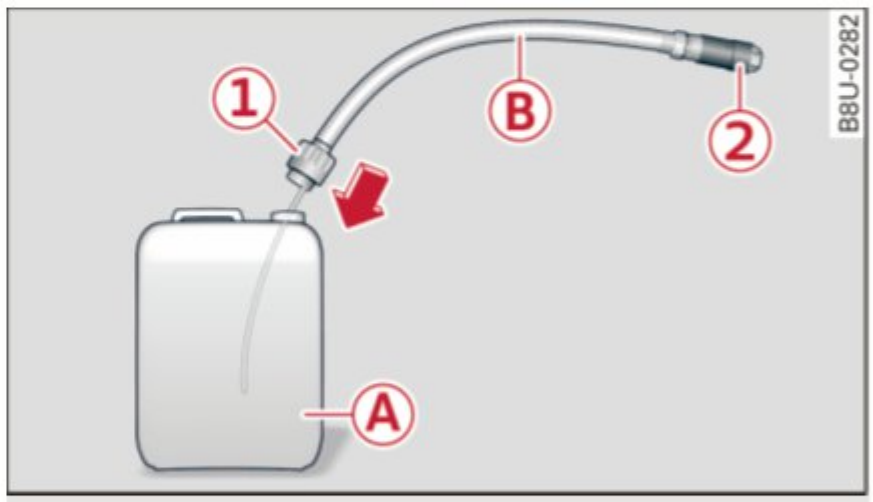

Fig. 179 Canister with attachable hose

- Remove the cover from the refill canister ⇨ ⚠ *in Filling AdBlue on page 196*, ⇨ (!) *in Filling AdBlue on page 196*.
- Secure the end of the hose (1) on the opening in the canister (A) by turning the hose to the right.
- Remove the cap (2) from the other end of the hose (B).
- Position the end of the hose (2) on the filler neck in the vehicle and turn the hose to the right to tighten it.
- Lift the canister up and then tip it. Continue holding the canister in a tipped position until it ▶

is empty or until no more fluid flows into the tank.

- Remove the canister and close the filler tube ⇨ *page 197, Completing AdBlue refill*.

Note

Only use refill canisters that are approved for your vehicle. Using other systems can cause AdBlue to leak.

Tips

– An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi repair facility can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle.
– A permitted refill canister contains approximately 1.3 gallons (5 liters) of AdBlue.

Completing AdBlue refill

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

Closing the filler neck

- Turn the cap on the filler neck to the right with the wheel wrench until the cap clicks into place. This tightens the cap to the specification ⇨ ⚠ *in Filling AdBlue on page 196*, ⇨ (!) *in Filling AdBlue on page 196*.
- Then press on the left side of the tank door until it latches.

After filling

The vehicle must be driven so that the system recognizes that the AdBlue was refilled. This can take several minutes.

- If there was no AdBlue left in the tank and a range of 0 mi (0 km) was shown in the display, switch the ignition on for about 30 seconds before starting the engine.

Tips

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. If this happens, the system will not detect that the AdBlue was refilled and it will continue to inform you of the low AdBlue level. The message turns off as soon as the tank thaws out again.

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with gasoline engine

It is very important that your emission control system (catalytic converter) is functioning properly to ensure that your vehicle is running in an environmentally sound manner.

- Always use lead-free gasoline ⇨ *page 190, Fuel supply*.
- Never run the tank down all the way to empty.
- Never put too much motor oil in your engine ⇨ *page 203, Adding engine oil*.
- Never try to push- or tow-start your vehicle.

The catalytic converter is an efficient "clean-up" device built into the exhaust system of the vehicle. The catalytic converter burns many of the pollutants in the exhaust gas before they are released into the atmosphere.

The exclusive use of unleaded fuel is critically important for the life of the catalytic converter and proper functioning of the engine.

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

– Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
– Do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where the hot exhaust system may come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material which can cause a fire.
– Do not apply additional undercoating or rustproofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields. During driving, the substance used for undercoating could overheat and cause a fire.

Note

– Be aware that just one tank filling with **leaded** fuel will already seriously degrade the performance of the catalytic converter.
– Do not exceed the correct engine oil level ⇨ *page 203*.

- Do not drive until the fuel tank becomes completely empty. The engine could misfire. Unburned fuel could also get into the exhaust system and this could cause the catalytic converter to overheat.
- Do not switch off the ignition while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not continue to operate your vehicle under these conditions, as otherwise fuel can reach the catalytic converter. This could result in overheating of the converter, requiring its replacement.
- To assure efficient operation of the Emission Control System:
  - Have your vehicle maintained properly and in accordance with the service recommendations in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.
  - Lack of proper maintenance as well as improper use of the vehicle will impair the function of the emission control system and could lead to damage.

For the sake of the environment

Even when the Emission Control System is operating properly, the exhaust gas can have a sulfur-like exhaust gas smell under some operating states. This depends on the sulfur content of the fuel being used. Using a different brand of fuel may help, or filling the tank with lead-free super grade gasoline.

Diesel particulate filter

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The diesel particulate filter filters nearly all of the soot particles out of the exhaust. The filter cleans itself automatically under normal driving conditions. If the filter cannot clean itself (for example, because you are only driving short distances), the filter becomes clogged with soot and the symbol for the diesel particulate filter illuminates ⇨ *page 18*.

WARNING

- Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the diesel particulate filter could start a fire.
- Do not apply an underbody protectant in the exhaust system area or a fire could start.

Engine compartment

Working in the engine compartment

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area on the vehicle. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Turn the engine off.
- Switch the ignition off.
- Set the parking brake.
- Select the P selector lever position.
- Let the engine cool down.
- Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the freeze protection contained in the coolant) can catch fire.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of personal injury.
- Never open the cap on the coolant expansion tank when the engine is warm. The cooling system is under pressure.
- To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a large cloth when opening.

- Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
- If tests need to be performed with the engine running, there is additional danger due to moving components (such as the ribbed belt, alternator and radiator fan) and from the high voltage ignition system.
- Do not under any circumstances give gas inadvertently (for example, by hand from the engine compartment) if the vehicle is stationary but the engine is running and a gear is engaged. Otherwise, the vehicle will start to move immediately and this could result in an accident.
- Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  - Do not smoke.
  - Never work near open flames.
  - Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby
- All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and injury, never touch the following components when the engine is running or is being started:
  - Ignition cable
  - Other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system
- If you must check or perform work on the engine while it is running:
  - Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the P (park) position first.
  - Always proceed with extreme caution so that clothing, jewelry or long hair do not become caught in the radiator fan, fan belt or other moving components or do not come into contact with hot components. Tie back long hair before beginning work and do not wear clothing that can hang down into the engine.
- Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
- Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to mix the fluids up. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening/closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.

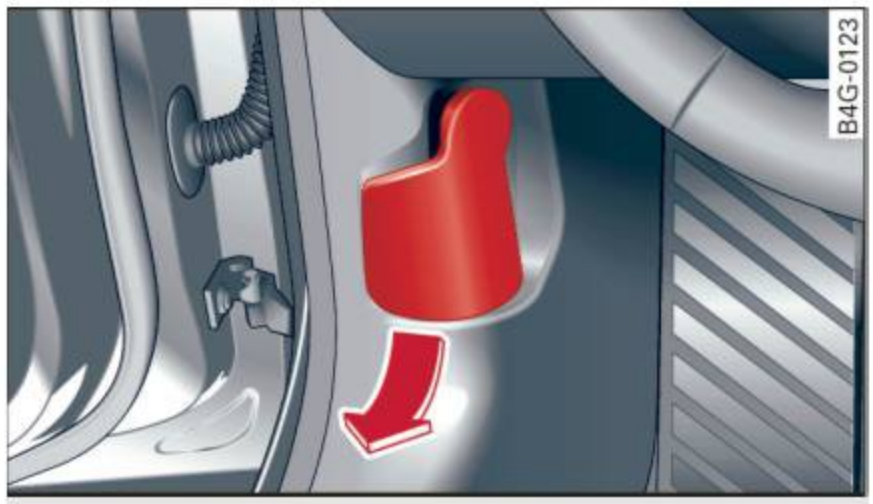

Fig. 180 Driver footwell: release lever

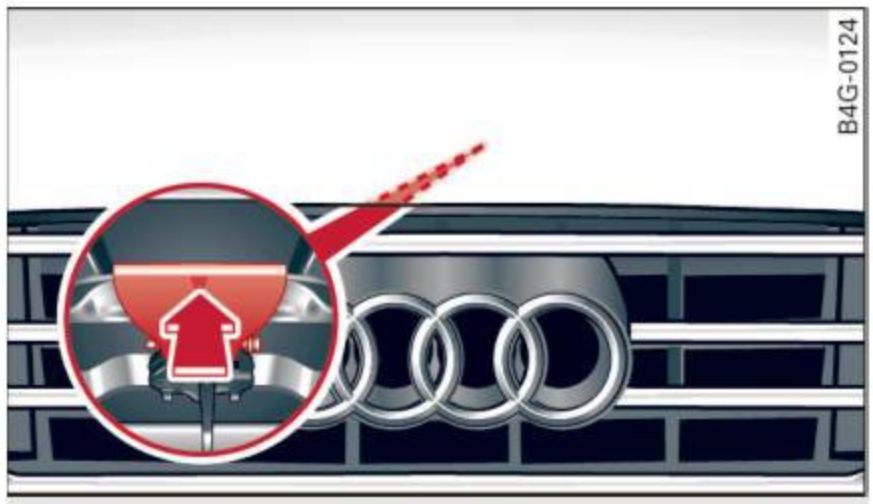

Fig. 181 Rocker switch under the hood

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

- With the driver's door open, pull the lever below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 180*.
- Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 181*. This releases the catch.
- Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.

– For safety reasons, the hood must always be closed securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.

– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

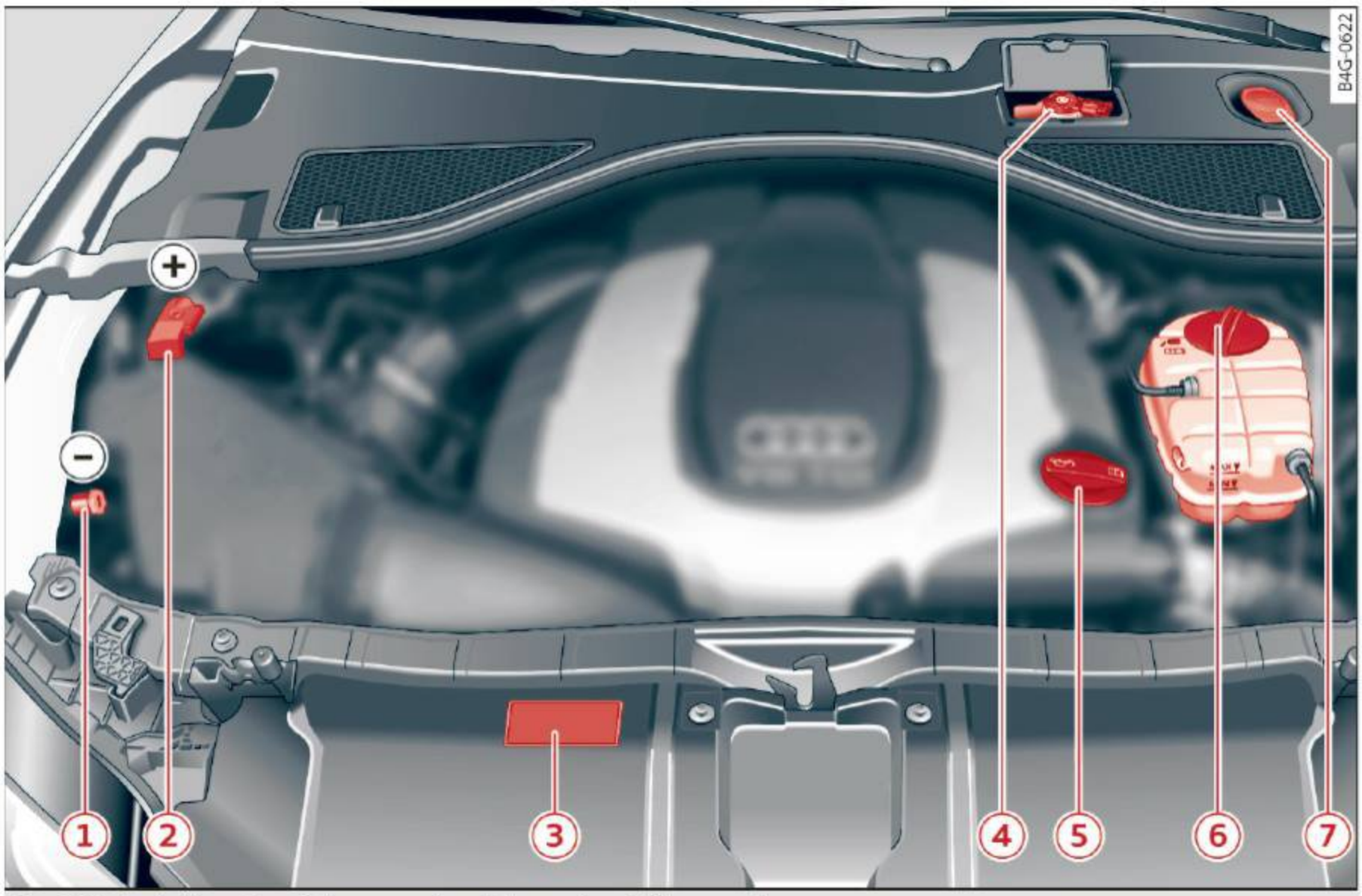

Fig. 182 Typical location of the reservoir and the engine oil filler opening

① Jump start point (-) with hex head screw ⇨ *page 207*, ⇨ *page 249*

② Jump start point (+) under a cover ⇨ *page 207*, ⇨ *page 249*

③ Engine oil label* with VW standard ⇨ *page 201*

④ Brake fluid reservoir (⚙) ⇨ *page 206*

⑤ Engine oil filling opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 203*

⑥ Coolant reservoir (🌡) ⇨ *page 205*

⑦ Washer fluid reservoir (💧) ⇨ *page 208*

The engine oil filling opening (item ⑤) may be located in a different area depending on the engine version.

⚠ WARNING

Read and follow the WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198.*

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

The service interval display in the instrument cluster of your vehicle will inform you when it is time for an oil change. We recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Audi Service Advisor.

If you must add oil between oil changes, use an oil that matches the Audi oil quality standard listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182.*

Audi recommends Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends LongLife high performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts

4G0012721BB

Using the proper engine oil is important for the functionality and service life of the engine. Your engine was factory-filled with a high-quality oil which can usually be used throughout the entire year.

Note

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Audi Owner's Manual and Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

– Use only a high quality engine oil that expressly complies with the Audi oil quality standard specified for your vehicle's engine. Using any other oil can cause serious engine damage.
– Do not mix any lubricants or other additives into the engine oil. Doing so can cause engine damage.

Tips

If you need to add oil and there is none available that meets the Audi oil quality standard your engine requires, you may add a total of no more than 0.5 qt (0.5 l) of a high-quality "synthetic"oil that meets the following specifications.

– Applies to: gasoline engine: ACEA A3 or API SM with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30, SAE 5W-30 or SAE 5W-40.
– Applies to: diesel engine: ACEA C3 or API CF with a viscosity grade of SAE 0W-30 or SAE 5W-30.
– For more information about engine oil that has been approved for your vehicle, please contact either your authorized Audi dealer or Audi Customer Relations at 1 (800) 822-2834 or visit our web site at www.audiusa.com or www.audicanada.ca.

Engine oil consumption

The engine in your vehicle depends on an adequate amount of oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts.

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines consume a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically, engines with a specified break-in period (see ⇨ *page 66*) consume more oil during the break-in period than they consume after oil consumption has stabilized.

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the RPM (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the ambient temperature and road conditions. Further factors are the amount of oil dilution from water condensation or fuel residue and the oxidation level of the oil. As any engine is subject to wear as mileage builds up, the oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn components may become necessary.

With all these variables coming into play, no standard rate of oil consumption can be established or specified. There is no alternative to regular and frequent checking of the oil level, see **Note**.

If the yellow engine oil level warning symbol in the instrument cluster lights up, you should check the oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 203*. Top off the oil at your earliest convenience ⇨ *page 203*.

WARNING

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198*.

Note

Driving with an insufficient oil level is likely to cause severe damage to the engine.

Tips

– **The oil pressure warning display is not an indicator of the oil level. Do not rely on it. Instead, check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably each time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**

– If you have the impression your engine consumes excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your Audi dealer to have the cause of your concern properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Audi dealer has instructions about how to measure oil consumption accurately.

Checking the engine oil level and adding engine oil

The engine oil level can be checked in the Infotainment system

Fig. 183 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198*.

Checking the engine oil level

- Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- Shut the engine off when it is warm. Wait approximately two minutes so that the engine oil can flow back into the oil pan.
- Switch only the ignition back on.
- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & checks** > **Oil level**.
- Read the oil level in the Infotainment system. Add engine oil if the bar in the oil level indicator is just before "min".

Adding engine oil

- Turn the engine off.
- Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap ⇨ *fig. 183*, ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*.
- Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 201*.
- Close the engine oil filler opening cap.
- Close the hood, restart the ignition after two minutes and read the current oil level in the Infotainment system.

WARNING

– When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must seal the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.

Note

– The engine oil level must not be under the "min" marking, because this increases the risk of engine damage.
– If the message **Oil level is too full. Please reduce oil level.** appears, there is too much oil in the engine and there is a risk of catalytic converter and engine damage. Do not start the engine. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have excess engine oil extracted if necessary.
– Do not mix any additional lubricants into the engine oil. Damage caused by such additives is not covered by the warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
– Pay attention to legal requirements when disposing of empty oil containers.

Tips

– The oil level indicator in the instrument cluster display is only an informational display. If the oil level is too low, a minimum oil warning appears in the instrument cluster. Add oil and close the hood. The current oil level is displayed in the Infotainment ▶

4G0012721BB

system the next time the ignition is switched on.
– The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). Because of this, the engine oil level must be checked regularly. It would be best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.

Changing the engine oil

We recommend that have your oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, **always read and heed all WARNINGS** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198*.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet. This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil diminish gradually during normal vehicle use.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or under predominantly stop-and-go traffic conditions, or have your vehicle where temperatures remain below freezing for extended periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized **Audi dealer** or a qualified service station.

If you choose to change your oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

To reduce the risk of personal injury if you must change the engine oil in your vehicle yourself:
– Wear eye protection.
– To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil, let the engine cool down to the touch.
– When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.
– Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing oil off thoroughly with soap and water.

Note

Never mix oil additives with your engine oil. These additives can damage your engine and adversely affect your Audi Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing your oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the used oil.
– Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Do not dump it on garden soil, wooded areas, into open streams or down sewage drains.
– Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed. ▶

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 14*. However, we do recommend occasionally checking the coolant level manually.

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G13	TL 774 J
G12++	TL 774 G

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.
– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.

Adding coolant

Fig. 184 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198*.

Checking the engine coolant level

Park the vehicle on a level surface.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Read the coolant level on the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*. The coolant level must be between the MIN and MAX markings when the engine in cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the MAX marking.

Adding coolant

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

- Let the engine cool down.
- Place a cloth over the coolant expansion tank cap and unscrew the cap counterclockwise ⇨ ⚠.
- Add coolant mixed in the correct ratio ⇨ *page 204* up to the MAX marking.
- Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
- Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, a loss can come from the coolant boiling through overheating and being pushed out of the cooling system. ▶

WARNING

- The cooling system is under pressure. Do not open the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. This increases the risk of burns.
- The coolant additive and the coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, keep the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.
- When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.

Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

Fig. 185 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198.*

Checking the brake fluid level

- Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically.

Changing the brake fluid

Have the brake fluid changed regularly by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This would impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- To ensure the brake system functions correctly, only use brake fluids that comply with VW standard 501 14 or FMVSS-116 DOT 4.

Note

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not get any brake fluid on the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Battery

General warnings about batteries

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc. should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Detailed warnings for the vehicle battery:

	Wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Wear protective gloves and eye protection.

	Fire, sparks, open flame and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Keep children away from battery acid and batteries.

WARNING

All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

Protect the vehicle battery against freezing if the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time so that it is not destroyed by "freezing" ⇨ *page 207*.

For the sake of the environment

Batteries contain polluting substances such as sulfuric acid and lead. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Vehicle battery

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 Volt battery in your vehicle.

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

If you do not drive your vehicle for several days or weeks, electrical equipment is gradually scaled back or switched off. This reduces energy use and ensures the vehicle will be able to start after long periods of time ⇨ *page 124*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the vehicle battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the vehicle battery. The vehicle battery must be charged every month to reduce the risk of this happening ⇨ *page 207*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the vehicle battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the vehicle battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before the cold time of year.

Charging the vehicle battery

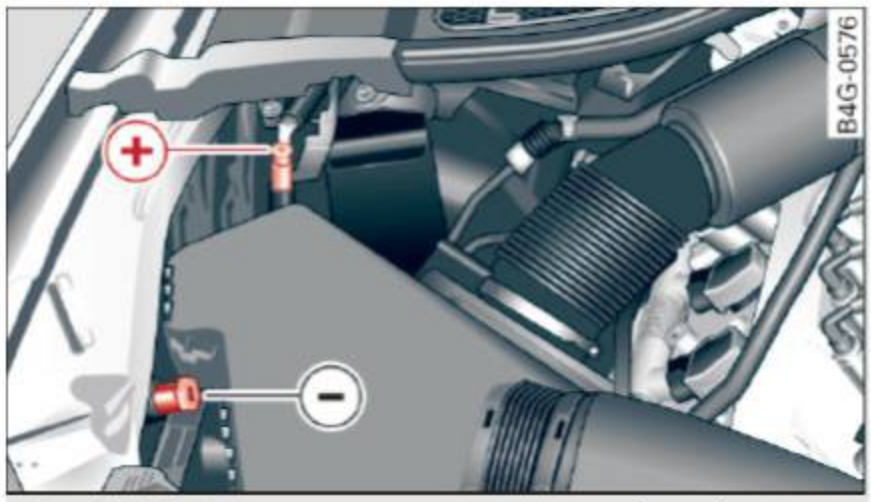

Fig. 186 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 30 amps/14.8 Volts**. The vehicle battery cables remain connected.

- Read the warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General warnings about batteries on page 207* and ⇨ ⚠.
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- Open the hood ⇨ *page 200*.
- Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 186*.

- Clamp the charger terminal clamps to the jump start pins according to the instructions. (pin under the red cover = “positive”, pin with hexagonal head = “negative”).
- Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- Remove the charger terminal clamps.
- Close the red cover on the positive terminal.
- Close the hood ⇨ *page 200*.

WARNING

– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the vehicle battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). A frozen or thawed vehicle battery must not be charged and must not be used anymore. The battery housing can crack and battery acid can leak out if ice forms, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

– Only charge the vehicle battery through the connections in the engine compartment.
– Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the vehicle battery.

Windshield washer system

Fig. 187 Engine compartment: washer fluid reservoir cap

The windshield washer reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 201, fig. 182*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 257*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Note

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions in the respective climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after a certain distance driven, a message appears in the ▶

instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Car menu. To do this, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

Your authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the indicator, select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**. Turn the control knob downward to **Reset oil change interval** and press the control knob.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the service life and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.
– Calculating the time to the next oil change is interrupted when the vehicle battery is disconnected ⇨ *page 235*.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

- ▸Check your tires regularly for damage (punctures, cuts, cracks and bulges). Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.
- ▸If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.
- ▸Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.
- ▸Protect your tires from oil, grease and fuel.
- ▸Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.
- ▸Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

Tire designations

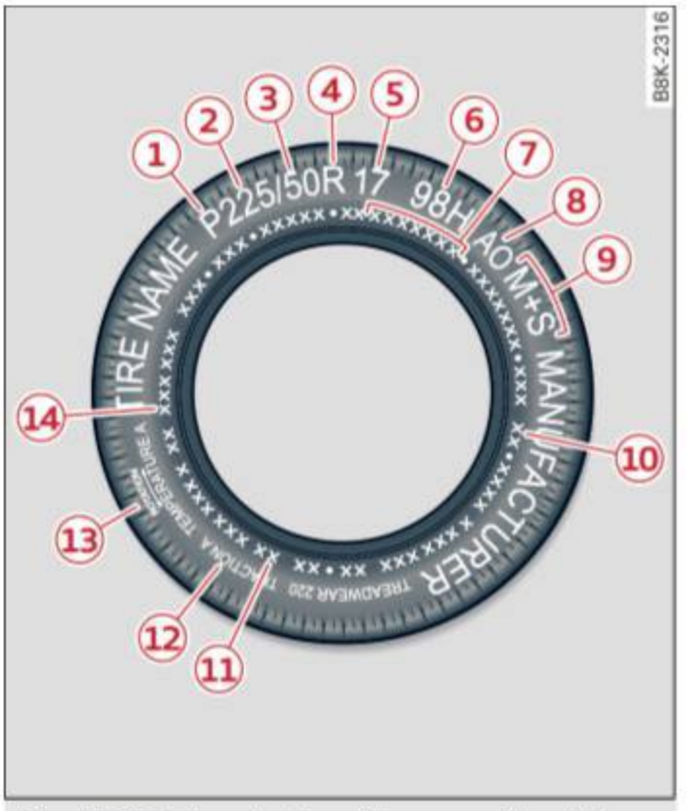

Fig. 188 Tire designations on the sidewall ▸

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

P indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. T indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

R indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 225*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR".

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2216 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2016.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation "AO" have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information. ▶

4G0012721BB

⑨ Mud and snow capability

"M/S" or "M+S" indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ⛄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 227*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 241*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim. ▸

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (“GAWR”)

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (“GVWR”)

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight ▶

4G0012721BB

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 213, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as "XL", "xl", "EXTRA LOAD", or "RF" on the sidewall. ▶

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 211*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇨ ⚠ *in Winter tires on page 225*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 219, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative ▶

4G0012721BB

comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2216 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2016. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 222*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 220, fig. 191* ▸

for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 222* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ▸New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ▸Use tires of the same construction, size (rolling circumference) and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ▸Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time.
- ▸Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire/rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

The spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle - for example, if winter tires or wide tires are installed - so only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different tire speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires. ▸

WARNING

- Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.
- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles - in some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.
- Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.
- Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so.
- Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
- If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear/damage

Fig. 189 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

- Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
- Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration and heavy braking increase tire wear.
- Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
- Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable ▸

vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high "wear indicators"⇨ *fig. 189* running across the tread. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠.

Tire rotation

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 241*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Tread that has worn too low or different tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can especially have a negative effect on handling, on the risk aquaplaning when driving through water, when driving through curves and when braking, which increases the risk of an accident.

[1] Obey any applicable regulations in your country.

4G0012721BB

Tire pressure

Fig. 190 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

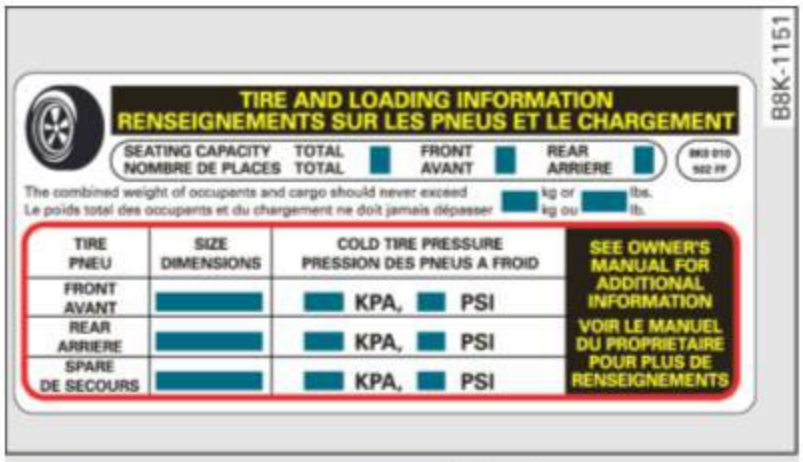

Fig. 191 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted in the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 190*, ⇨ *fig. 191*.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 222*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking/correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Check the label ⇨ *fig. 191* for the correct tire pressure based on vehicle load.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Store the new tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 230*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ **WARNING**

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 223, Tires and vehicle load limits*.

▸

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.
– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tips

Audi recommends using the tire pressure specified for a normal load ⇨ *table on page 222* or for a full load when the vehicle is partially loaded.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are differences between this information and the tire pressures specified on the label on the driver's side B-pillar, always follow the specification on the B-pillar label ⇨ *page 220, fig. 190*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed. ▶

4G0012721BB

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 3 people)[a]				Maximum load			
		front		rear		front		rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A6: 2.0L 4 cylinders	225/55 R17 97H All Season	32	220	29	200	35	240	38	260
	245/45 R18 100H All Season	33	230	32	220	35	240	38	260
	255/40 R19 100H All Season	33	230	32	220	35	240	38	260
	255/40 R19 100Y High Performance	32	220	32	220	33	230	36	250
	255/35 R20 97Y High Performance	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
A6: 3.0L 6 cylinders	225/55 R17 97H All Season	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	245/45 R18 100H All Season	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	255/40 R19 100H All Season	35	240	32	220	38	260	41	280
	255/40 R19 100Y High Performance	36	250	33	230	39	270	42	290
	255/35 R20 97Y High Performance	39	270	36	250	44	300	46	320
S6: 4.0L 8 cylinders	255/40 R19 100Y High Performance	39	270	35	240	42	290	44	300
	255/35 R20 97Y High Performance	44	300	39	270	46	320	48	330

[a] 2 people in the front, 1 person in the rear

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 220* and load limits ⇨ *page 223*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar ⇨ *page 220, fig. 190*. ▶

4G0012721BB

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.
- The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.
- Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.
- Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS"on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 220, fig. 190*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 220, fig. 190*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. ▸

(1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

▶ Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 210, fig. 188*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 238, After changing a wheel*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

▶ Use winter tires on all four wheels.
▶ Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
▶ Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
▶ Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 220*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 in (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

⚠ WARNING

– Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.
– Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains not only improve the driving in winter road conditions, but also the braking.

- Only install snow chains on the front wheels. This applies also to vehicles with all wheel drive*.
- Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Note the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Snow chains can damage the rims/wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.
– Using snow chains that add more than 0.4 inch (10.5 mm) of height can severely damage the wheel housings and other vehicle components.
– Do not install and use snow chains if there is a malfunction in the adaptive air suspension*, because the vehicle height will be very low. If you drive with snow chains anyway, the wheel housings and other vehicle components can be severely damaged.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be useful to switch on sport mode ⇨ *page 121*.

Low aspect ratio tires

Your Audi is factory-equipped with low aspect ratio tires. These tires have been thoroughly tested and been selected specifically for your model for their superb performance, road feel and handling under a variety of driving conditions. Ask your authorized Audi dealer for more details.

The low aspect ratio of these tires is indicated by a numeral of **55 or less** in the tire's size designation. The numeral represents the ratio of the tire's sidewall height in relation to its tread width expressed in percentage. Conventional tires have a height/width ratio of 60 or more.

The performance of low-aspect-ratio tires is particularly sensitive to improper inflation pressure. It is therefore important that low aspect ratio tires are inflated to the specified pressure and that the inflation pressure is regularly checked and maintained. Tire pressures should be checked at least once a month and always before a long trip ⇨ *page 220*.

What you can do to avoid tire and rim damage

Low aspect ratio tires can be damaged more easily by impact with potholes, curbs, gullies or ridges on the road, particularly if the tire is underinflated. ▶

In order to minimize the occurrence of impact damage to the tires of your vehicle, we recommend that you observe the following precautions:

- Always maintain recommended inflation pressures. Check your tire pressure every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) and add air if necessary.
- Drive carefully on roads with potholes, deep gullies or ridges. The impact from driving through or over such obstacles can damage your tires. Impact with a curb may also cause damage to your tires.
- After any impact, immediately inspect your tires or have them inspected by the nearest authorized Audi dealer. Replace a damaged tire as soon as possible.
- Inspect your tires every 2,000 miles (3,000 km) for damage and wear. Damage is not always easy to see. Damage can lead to loss of air and underinflation, which could eventually cause tire failure. If you believe that a tire may have been damaged, replace the tire as soon as possible.
- These tires may wear more quickly than others.
- Please also remember that, while these tires deliver responsive handling, they may ride less comfortably and make more noise than other choices.

Reduced performance in winter/cold season conditions

All tires are designed for certain purposes. The low aspect ratio, ultra high performance tires originally installed on your vehicle are intended for maximum dry and wet road performance and handling. They are not suitable for cold, snowy or icy weather conditions. If you drive under those circumstances, you should equip your vehicle with all-season or winter tires, which offer better traction under those conditions. We suggest you use the recommended snow or all-season tires specified for your vehicle, or their equivalent.

Refer to ⇨ *page 225* for more detailed information regarding winter tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

- Tread wear
- Traction AA A B C
- Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 210, fig. 188*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠. ▶

4G0012721BB

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire pressure monitoring system

General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Tire pressure monitoring system

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Fig. 192 Instrument cluster: indicator light with message

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an indicator light (!) and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the Infotainment system again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 230*. The tire pressure monitoring system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 220, fig. 191*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– the tire pressure in one or more tires is too low.
– the tire has structural damage.
– the tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 230*.
– the spare tire* is installed.

Indicator lights

(!) - Loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠.
Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary.

Check/correct the pressures of all four tires and store the pressure again in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 230*.

TPMS (**T**ire **P**ressure **M**onitoring **S**ystem) **Tire pressure: System malfunction!**. If **TPMS** appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Try to store the correct tire pressures ⇨ *page 230*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressure.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressure. You must check the tire pressure regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the tire pressure monitoring system indicator may be delayed.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with “Audi Original Tires” ⇨ *page 217*. We recommend that you use these tires.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

If the tire pressure changes or a tire is replaced, it must be confirmed in the Infotainment system.

- Make sure before storing that the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 220*.
- Switch the ignition on.
- Select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* Systems** control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitor** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The necessary care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Preferably purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products.
- Do not dispose of leftover cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits remain on the vehicle, the more the surface may be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at the seals on the side windows, doors, lids or the sunroof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car washes

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows and roof* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working down using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To avoid damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To avoid damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois.

WARNING

- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator to reduce the risk of accidents.

- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried first with a few careful brake applications.

Note

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges or similar items.
- Matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle parts painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	⇨ *page 48, Cleaning windshield wiper blades*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary

Component	Situation	Solution
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Refer to the paint number on the vehicle data label, repair with touch up paint ⇨ *page 255*
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then protect with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Protect with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a] and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as painted parts ⇨ *page 231*

[a] Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a]
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract

Component	Situation	Solution
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a)]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a)], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a)]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a)]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: grease dissolving spray
	Special deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use specially-colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon parts	Deposits	clean the same way as plastic parts

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield may not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

Note

- **Headlights/tail lights**
  - Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  - Do not use any cleaning product that contains alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims such as stone chips or scratches must be repaired immediately.
- **Sensors/camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To ▶

avoid scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To avoid damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts/trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**
  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately - these could damage the paint.
- **Displays**
  - To avoid scratches, do not use dry cleaning methods on displays.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components chemically or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.
  - If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- **Textiles/artificial leather/Alcantara**
  - Never treat artificial leather/Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remove or similar products.
  - Have a specialist remove stubborn stains to prevent damage.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.
- **Natural leather**
  - Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  - Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  - Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  - To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Tips

- Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
- Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.

Placing your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a longer period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 206*.

Emergency assistance

General information

- Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. It you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- Set the parking brake.
- Switch the emergency flashers on.
- Set up the warning triangle ⇨ *page 236*.
- Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Follow the steps given above. This is for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

Equipment

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle

Fig. 193 Luggage compartment lid: warning triangle

The warning triangle placed in the vehicle at the factory is located in the luggage compartment.

- To remove the warning triangle, press the retainer in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 193* and fold the holder down.

The luggage compartment lid is only designed to hold the warning triangle offered by the Audi Genuine Accessories program.

Vehicle tool kit

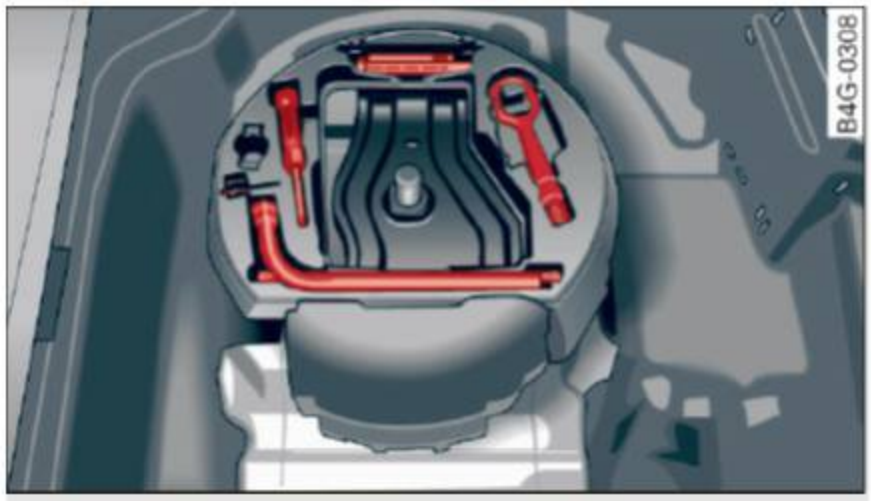

Fig. 194 Luggage compartment: vehicle tool kit

The vehicle tools and vehicle jack* are stored in the luggage compartment under the floor cover.

- Lift the cargo floor by the plastic handle.
- Hook the handle into the luggage compartment weather strip.
- Turn the handle counter-clockwise and remove the cover or the spare tire*.
- Unhook the cargo floor before closing the rear lid.

WARNING

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

– Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
– The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
– Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
– Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
– Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

The vehicle jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- Take the **jack** and the **spare tire*** out of the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 236*.

WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack, always fully set the parking brake and block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 134*.

Tips

Before changing the wheel, you must activate the jacking mode, so that the automatic controls for the Adaptive Air Suspension* do not make it more difficult to lift the vehicle with the jack ⇨ *page 239*.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Activate the vehicle jack mode* ⇨ *page 239*.
2. Remove the **decorative wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 238, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 238, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
3. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 238*.
4. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack and align the jack below that point ⇨ *page 239*.
5. **Raise** the car with the jack ⇨ *page 239*.
6. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 241*.
7. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
8. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack.
9. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 238*.
10. Replace the decorative **wheel cover*** or the **wheel bolt caps***.
11. Deactivate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **Off**.

The vehicle jack mode* switches off automatically at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 240* and ⇨ *page 242*.

4G0012721BB

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 134*.
- Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).
- Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible.

Tips

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
– After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 230*.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to: vehicles with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.

Fig. 195 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

Removing

- Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 195*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.

Fig. 196 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 196*.

Refitting

- Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.

Fig. 197 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 197*.

Tightening

- Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack and cause serious personal injuries.
– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

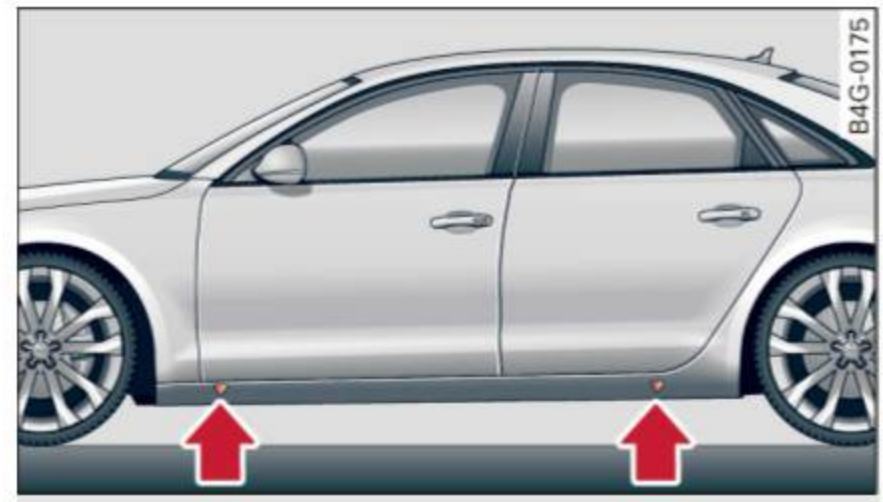

Fig. 198 Sill panels: markings

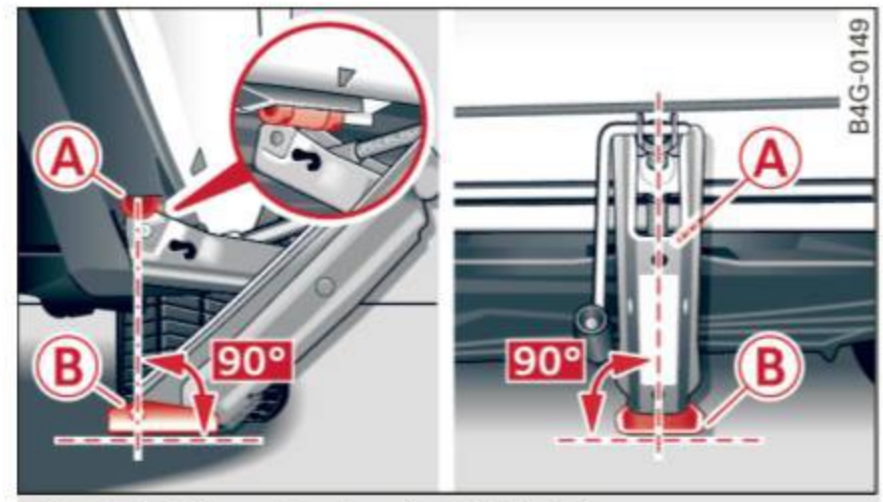

Fig. 199 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- Activate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 198*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- Applies to: vehicles with a sill: Remove the cover from the sill before lifting the vehicle with a vehicle jack ⇨ *page 240*.
- Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 199* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.
- Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 199* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.

▸ Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 198*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.
– Changes in temperature or load can affect the height of the vehicle.

ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

ⓘ Tips

The vehicle jack mode* switches off automatically at speeds above 6 mph (10 km/h).

Removing and installing the sill extension cover

Applies to: vehicles with sill extension

Fig. 200 Sill: removing the cover

▸ Pull the cover down to remove it. ⇨ *fig. 200*
▸ To install the cover, insert it in the mount and press it upward until it clicks into place. The cover must be flush with the surface of the sill extension.

ⓘ Tips

Some models may also have a cover for the rear vehicle lift point.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.

Fig. 201 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts

Fig. 202 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows:

Removing the wheel

- Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 201*.
- Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 202*.
- Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the spare wheel

- Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack is fully released.
- Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 238*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.

– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 241*.

– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire. ▶

- If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
- We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
- Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 217, New tires or wheels* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

- **Check the tire pressure on the spare tire immediately after installation.**
- **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
- **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lb (120 Nm).**
- **If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.**
- **Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.**

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

- If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 217, New tires or wheels*.
- Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
- In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
- Always store damaged wheel, jack and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Spare tire

Space-saving spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with spare tire

Fig. 203 Luggage compartment: space-saving spare tire

The spare tire is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and, if necessary, replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the spare tire. The spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle.

Space-saving spare tire*

The tire pressure must be 61 PSI (4.2 bar).

Removing the spare tire

- Lift the cargo floor using the plastic handle and hook the handle onto the luggage compartment seal ⇨ *fig. 203*.
- Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it. ▶

- Remove the spare tire.
- Unhook the cargo floor before closing the rear lid.

Snow chains

Using snow chains on the spare tire is not permitted due to technical reasons.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

WARNING

- After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as quickly as possible.
- Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
- Avoid full-throttle acceleration, heavy braking, and fast cornering, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Never drive using more than one spare tire, because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Normal tires or winter tires must not be mounted on the spare tire rim.
- Only use the collapsible spare tire in emergencies and drive very carefully, especially if it is more than 6 years old.

Fuses

Replacing fuses

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

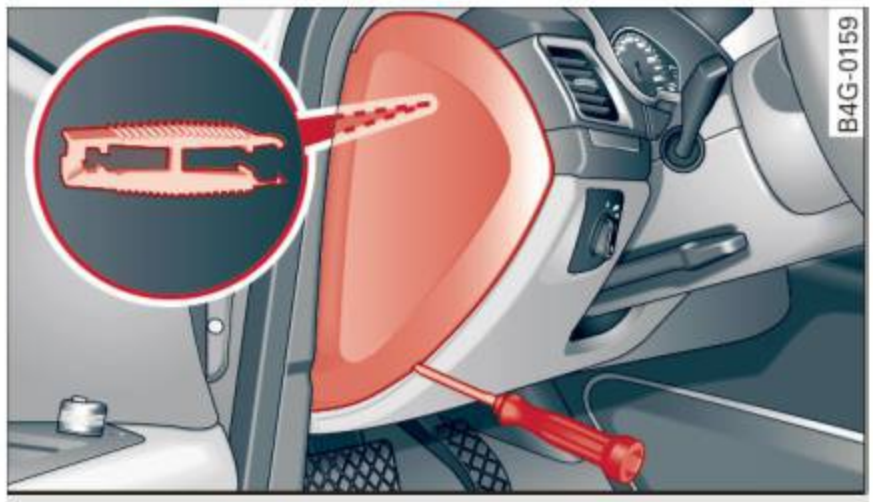

Fig. 204 Driver's side cockpit: cover

The fuses are located on front left and right of the cockpit and behind the trim on the right side of the luggage compartment.

- Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment.
- Remove the corresponding cover or remove the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 194*.
- Remove the colored plastic clip from the fuse panel, if necessary ⇨ *page 245, fig. 205*. You can dispose of the plastic clip.
- Remove the clamp from the rear side of the cover ⇨ *fig. 204*.
- Remove the fuse using the clamp.
- Replace the blown fuse only with an identical new one.
- Install the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and a fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
– Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Driver side cockpit fuse assignment

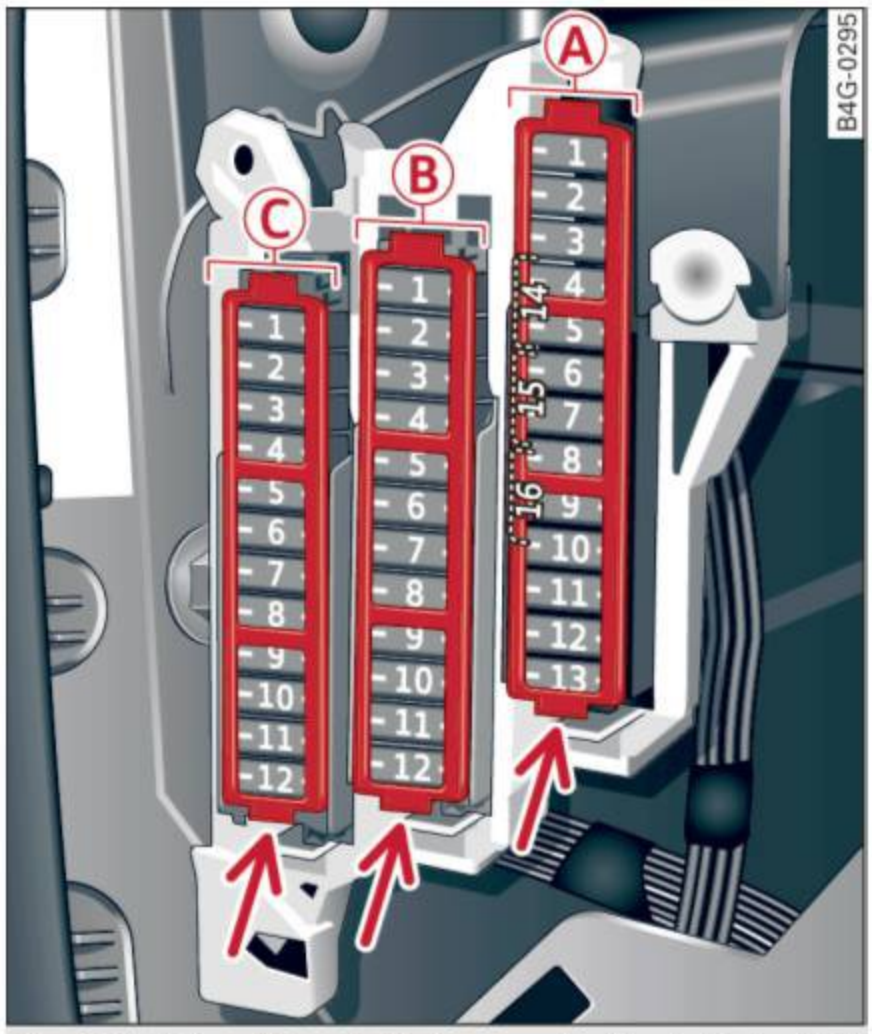

Fig. 205 Driver side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Electromechanical power steering, trailer hitch, ionizer, switch strip, seat heating (rear), electromechanical parking brake
2	Horn, climate control system, Gateway, automatic dimming interior rearview mirror, On-Board Unit
4	Parking aid, headlight range adjustment
5	Dynamic steering, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
6	Headlights
7	Adaptive cruise control
8	Front passenger's seat sensors, airbag
9	Gateway
10	Engine sound, night vision assist, garage door opener (HomeLink), parking aid
11	Video camera image processing
12	Headlights
13	Steering column switch module
14	Terminal 15 (luggage compartment)
15	Starter

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment system
2	Infotainment system
3	Front passenger's seat
5	Airbag, Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC)
6	Anti-theft alarm system
7	Electromechanical parking brake
8	Interior lights
9	Windshield video camera heating, light/ rain sensor
10	Lumbar support (driver's seat)
11	Driver's seat
12	Electronic stabilization control
13	Horn
14	Headlights
15	Front seat heating
16	Dynamic steering

Fuse panel Ⓒ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Clutch pedal
2	Fuel pump
3	Brake light sensor
4	AdBlue (diesel engine)/engine acoustics
5	Rear door
6	Front door
7	Electronic stabilization control
8	Windshield wiper motor
9	Headlight washer system
10	Interior lighting, climate control system
11	Headlights
12	Sunroof

4G0012721BB

Front passenger side cockpit fuse assignment

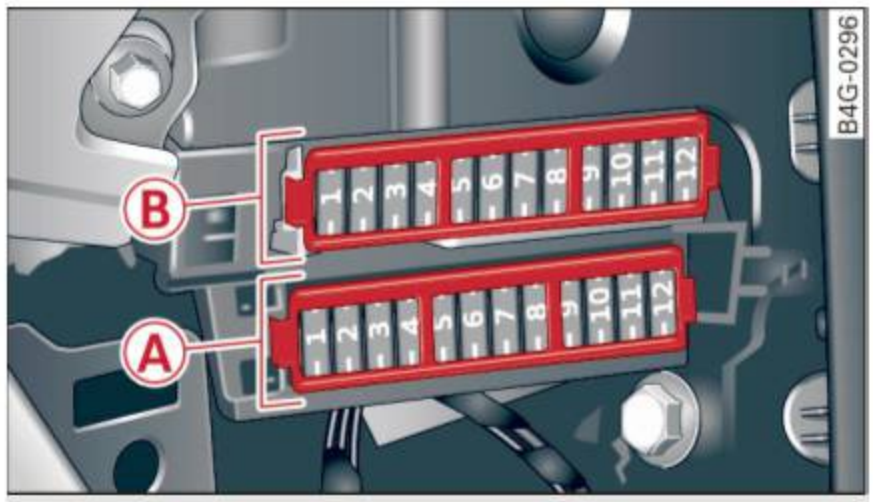

Fig. 206 Front passenger side cockpit: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment, CD changer
2	Infotainment (display)
3	Emergency call

Fuse panel Ⓑ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Climate control system
2	Climate control system (blower)
3	Diagnostic interface
4	Electrical ignition lock
5	Electronic steering column lock
6	Steering column switch module
7	Power steering column adjustment
8	Light switch
9	Head-up display
10	Instrument cluster
11	Infotainment, DVD changer

Luggage compartment fuse assignment

Fig. 207 Luggage compartment: fuse panel with plastic bracket

Fuse panel Ⓐ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Trailer hitch/220 volt socket
2	Trailer hitch/climatized cup holder
3	Trailer hitch/adjusting front passenger's seat from the rear
4	Electromechanical parking brake
5	Electromechanical parking brake
6	Front door (front passenger's side)
7	Rear exterior lighting
8	Central locking, closing aid
9	Seat heating (front)
11	Seat heating (rear), climate control system
12	Trailer hitch

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Left safety belt tensioner
2	Right safety belt tensioner
3	AdBlue tank (diesel engine)/fuel pump
4	AdBlue tank (diesel engine)/engine mount (gasoline engine)
5	Sensor-controlled luggage compartment lid
6	Air suspension, adaptive dampers
7	Rear door (front passenger's side)
8	Tail lights
9	Luggage compartment lid

▶

Fuse panel Ⓑ (red)	
10	Rear seat entertainment
12	Rear spoiler (Sportback), sunroof

Fuse panel Ⓒ (brown)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Infotainment system
2	Infotainment system
3	Infotainment, automatic dimming interior rearview mirror
4	Rearview camera/peripheral cameras
5	TV tuner
6	Tank leak detection system
7	Sockets
8	Parking heater
10	Lumbar support (front passenger's seat)
12	Infotainment system

Fuse panel Ⓓ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Air suspension, adaptive dampers, sport differential, electromechanical parking brake
2	Clutch pedal position sensor/automatic transmission
3	Seats
4	Rear wiper (Avant)
5	Side assist
6	Engine sound
7	Infotainment/sound amplifier
8	Gateway
9	Sport differential
10	Climate control system
11	Tire pressure monitoring system, parking heater
12	Start/Stop system

Fuse panel Ⓔ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Special purpose vehicles/rear seats

Fuse panel Ⓕ (black)	
No.	**Equipment**
1	Rear window defogger

4G0012721BB

Bulbs

Replacing light bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace burned out bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, and parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights):

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light can be identified by the high voltage sticker.

LED headlights*

LED headlights require no maintenance. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer if a bulb needs to be replaced.

WARNING

Contact with high-voltage components of the electrical system and improper replacement of gas discharge (Xenon) headlight bulbs can cause serious personal injury and death.

– Xenon bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed.
– Changing Xenon lamps requires the special training, instructions and equipment.
– Only an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps.

WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts.

– If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Tips

– If you still prefer to replace the light bulbs yourself, be aware that the engine compartment is a hazardous area to work in ⇨ *page 198* ⇨ ⚠
– It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you need to change a bulb.

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Starting with jumper cables

If necessary, the engine can be started by connecting it to the battery of another vehicle.

If the engine should fail to start because of a discharged or weak battery, the battery can be connected to the battery of *another* vehicle, using a **pair of jumper cables** to start the engine.

Jumper cables

Use *only* jumper cables of sufficiently large **cross section** to carry the starter current safely. Refer to the manufacturer's specifications.

Use only jumper cables with *insulated* terminal clamps which are distinctly marked:

plus (+) cable in most cases colored **red**

minus (-) cable in most cases colored **black**.

WARNING

Batteries contain electricity, acid, and gas. Any of these can cause very serious or fatal injury. Follow the instructions below for safe handling of your vehicle's battery.

- Always shield your eyes and avoid leaning over the battery whenever possible.
- A dead battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, you must thaw it before connecting the jump start cables. If you do not, this increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
- Do not allow battery acid to contact eyes or skin. Flush any contacted area with water immediately.
- Improper use of a booster battery to start a vehicle may cause an explosion.
- Vehicle batteries generate explosive gases. Keep sparks, flame and lighted cigarettes away from batteries.
- Do not try to jump start any vehicle with a low acid level in the battery.
- The voltage of the booster battery must also have a 12-volt rating. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery. Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different "Ah" rating may cause an explosion and personal injury.
- Never charge a frozen battery. Gas trapped in the ice may cause an explosion.
- Never charge or use a battery that has been frozen. The battery case may have be weakened.
- Use of batteries of different voltage or substantially different capacity (Ah) rating may cause an explosion and injury. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be lower than that of the discharged battery.
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 198*.

Note

- Applying a higher voltage booster battery will cause expensive damage to sensitive electronic components, such as control units, relays, radio, etc.
- There must be no electrical contact between the vehicles as otherwise current could already start to flow as soon as the positive (+) terminals are connected. ▶

4G0012721BB

Tips

The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. When jump starting or charging the battery, never connect the negative ground cable to the battery negative post because the battery manager system must be able to detect the battery's state of charge. Always connect the negative ground cable to the negative ground post of the battery manager control unit.

Use of jumper cables

Make sure to connect the jumper cable clamps in exactly the order described below!

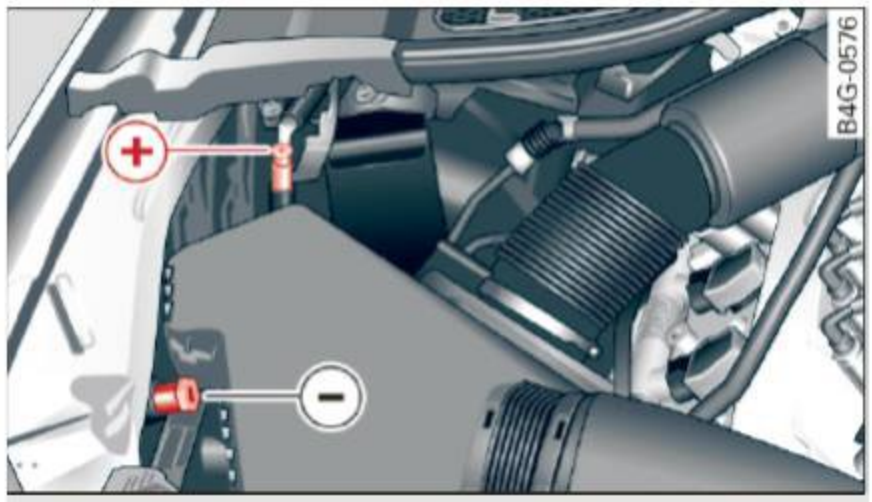

Fig. 208 Engine compartment: connectors for jump start cables and charger

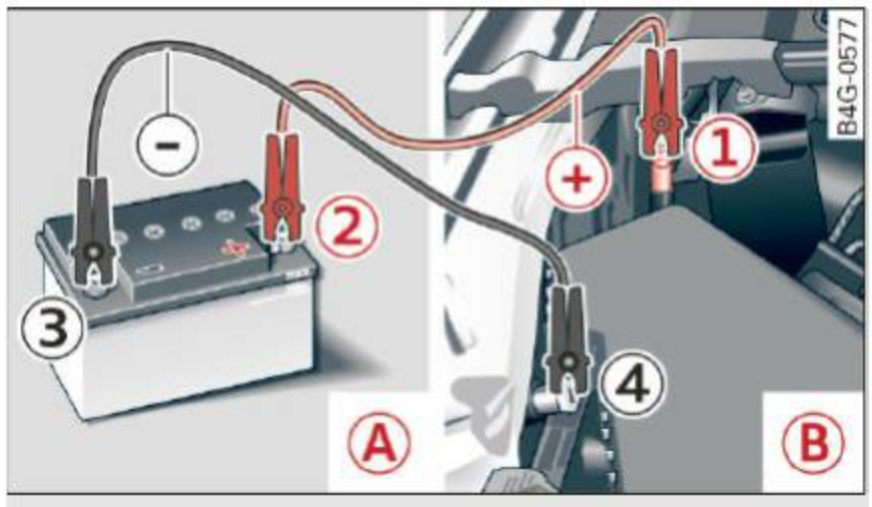

Fig. 209 Jump starting with the battery of another vehicle: Ⓐ – booster battery, Ⓑ – discharged vehicle battery

The procedure described below for connecting jumper cables is intended to provide a jump start for your vehicle.

Vehicle with discharged battery:

- Turn off lights and accessories, move lever of automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or P (Park) and set parking brake.

Connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+) (red)

- Open the red cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 208*.

1. Connect one end of the red positive cable on the **jump start bolt** ⇨ *fig. 209* ① (bolt under the red cover = "positive") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.
2. Connect the other end to the positive terminal ② of the booster battery Ⓐ.

Connect NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) (black)

3. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative terminal ③ of the booster battery Ⓐ.
4. Connect the other end to the **jump start pin** ④ (bolts with hex head bolt = "negative") of the vehicle to be started Ⓑ.

Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle with the booster battery Ⓐ. Run the engine at a moderate speed.
- Start engine with discharged vehicle battery Ⓑ in the usual manner.
- If the engine fails to start, do not keep the starter cranking for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and then try again.
- With engine running, remove jumper cables from both vehicles in the exact *reverse* order.
- Close the red cover on the positive terminal.

The battery is vented to the outside to prevent gases from entering the vehicle interior. Make sure that the jumper clamps are well connected with their metal parts in full contact with the battery terminals.

WARNING

To avoid serious personal injury and damage to the vehicle, heed all warnings and instructions of the jumper cable manufacturer. If in doubt, call for road service.

– Jumper cables must be long enough so that the vehicles do not touch.
– When connecting jumper cables, make sure that they cannot get caught in any moving parts in the engine compartment.

– Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 198*.

Note

Improper hook-up of jumper cables can ruin the generator.

– Always connect POSITIVE (+) to POSITIVE (+), and NEGATIVE (–) to NEGATIVE (–) ground post of the battery manager control unit.
– Check that all screw plugs on the battery cells are screwed in firmly. If not, tighten plugs prior to connecting clamp on negative battery terminal.
– Please note that the procedure for connecting a jumper cable as described above applies specifically to the case of your vehicle being jump started. When you are giving a jump start to another vehicle, do *not* connect the negative **(–)** cable to the negative **(–)** terminal on the discharged battery ④ ⇨ *fig. 209*. Instead, securely connect the negative **(–)** cable to either a solid metal component that is firmly bolted to the engine block or to the engine block itself. If the battery that is being charged does not vent to the outside, escaping battery gas could ignite and explode!

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

– **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.**
– **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
– **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flat bed truck.**
– **To load the vehicle on to the flat bed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 251* and ⇨ *page 252*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

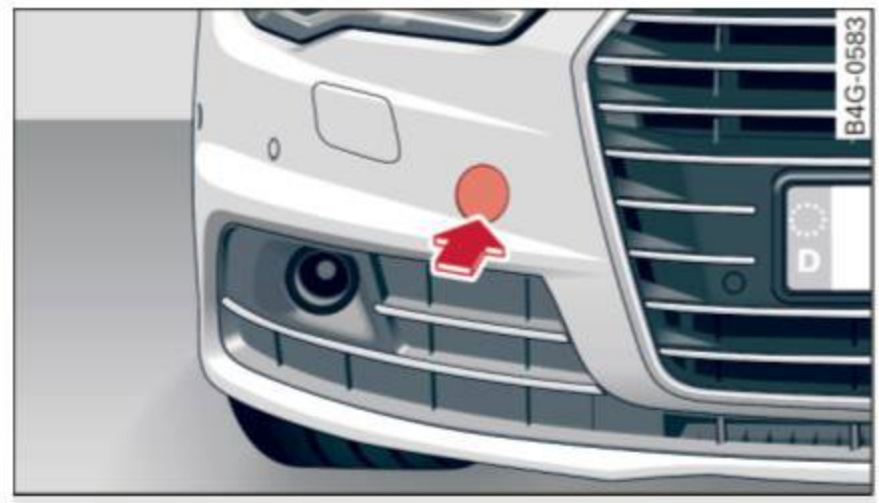

Fig. 210 Front bumper: cover

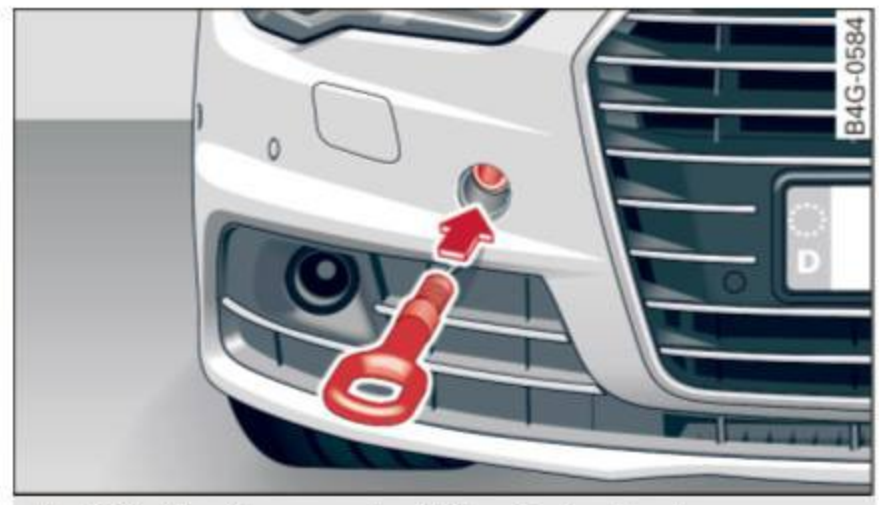

Fig. 211 Front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 236*.
▸ Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 210*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 211* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit. ▸

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Rear towing loop

Fig. 212 Rear bumper: cover

Fig. 213 Rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening is located in the bumper on the right rear side.

- Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 236*.
- Press the cap inward with brief, forceful pressure ⇨ *fig. 212*. The cap will loosen from the bumper.
- Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops ⇨ *fig. 213* and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and that could cause an accident.

Loading the vehicle onto a flat bed truck

Fig. 214 Vehicle on flat bed truck

Front hook up

- Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

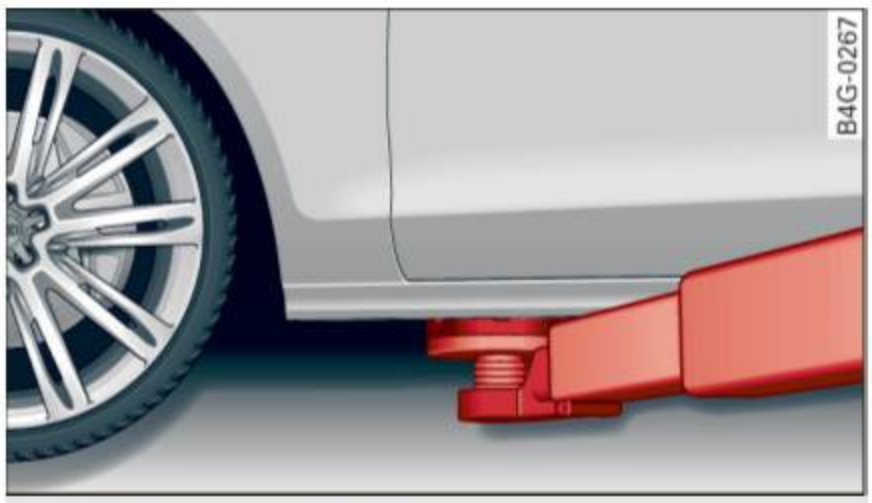

Fig. 215 Front lifting point

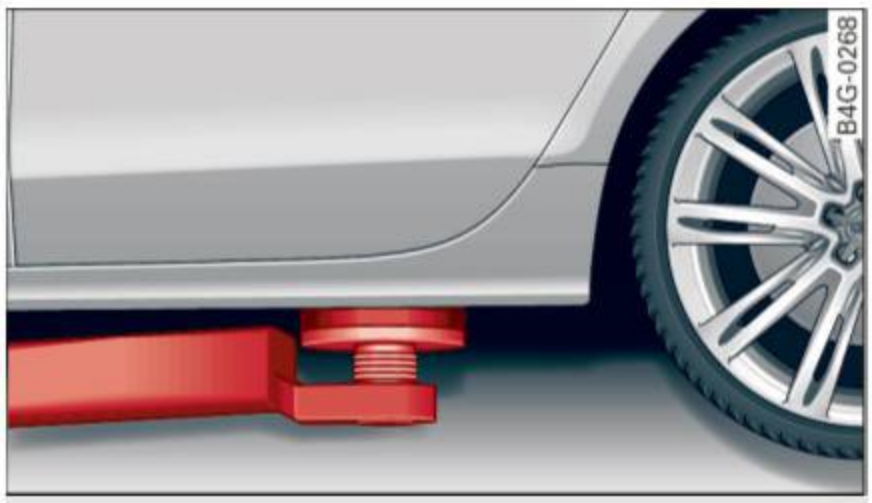

Fig. 216 Rear lifting point

- Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- Activate the vehicle jack mode* in the MMI: CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Servicing & checks** > **Air susp.: jack mode** > **On**.
- Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 215* and ⇨ *fig. 216*.
- Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

The vehicle jack mode* must be activated so that the automatic adjustment of the Adaptive Air Suspension* does not make it more difficult to raise the vehicle with the floor jack.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 215*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 216*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 239*.

⚠ WARNING

- To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  - Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 215* and ⇨ *fig. 216*.
  - Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components such as the engine block or transmission are removed.
- When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

(!) Note

- Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  - **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  - **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**

- **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
- **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

Vehicle carrier

Applies to: vehicles with air suspension

Note

When transporting the vehicle on a car carrier, train, ship or by other means, only tie the vehicle down at the running surface of the tires, which is the outer circumference. Securing the vehicle at the axle components, suspension struts or towing eyes is not permitted because the pressure in the air suspension struts can change during transport. The vehicle may not be secured sufficiently if this happens.

Technical data

Vehicle specifications

Fig. 217 Windshield (front left): Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

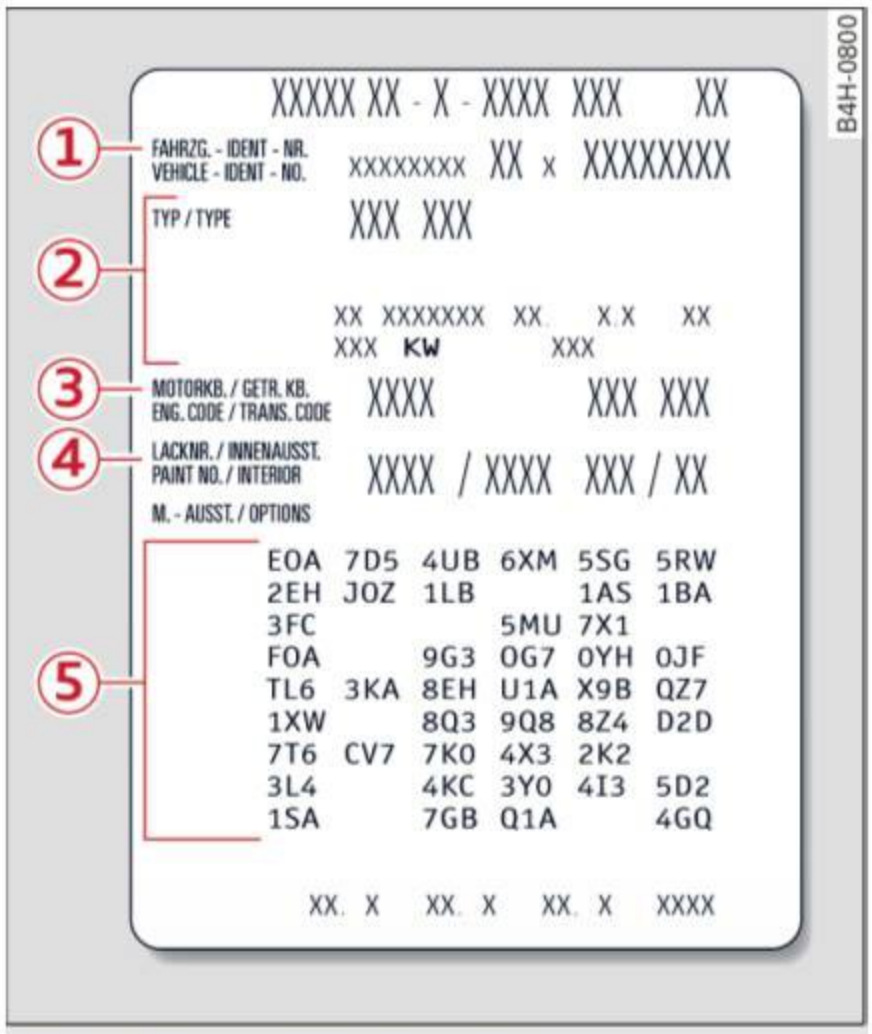

Fig. 218 Vehicle identification label

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

The VIN number is located in the following places:

– In the Infotainment system: select: the CAR function button > **(Car)* systems** control button > **Serve & checks** > **VIN number**.
– on the vehicle identification label
– under the windshield on the driver's side*

Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 218* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The information of the vehicle identification label can also be found in your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side. It shows the month and year of production and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle (perforation) as well as the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR).

High voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located in the engine compartment next to the engine hood release. The spark ignition system complies with the Canadian standard ICES-002.

Notes about technical data

The values may differ for some markets depending on equipment installed in certain markets and the measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Missing technical data was not available at the time of printing.

Weights

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the door jamb on the driver's side.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which includes passenger weight (150 lbs/68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight ⇨ ⚠.

Gross Axle Weight Rating

The Gross Axle Weight Rating is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle ⇨ ⚠.

Vehicle capacity weight

The vehicle capacity weight (max. load) is listed either on the driver's side B-pillar or inside the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

- The actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles should not exceed the permissible weights, and their combination must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.
- Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.

Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight. Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.
- Always observe local regulations.

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A6 sedan	194.2 (4,932)	73.8 (1,874)	82.1 (2,086)	57.8 (1,468)
S6 sedan	194.4 (4,937)	73.8 (1,874)	82.1 (2,086)	56.8 (1,443)

When driving on poor roads, by curbs and on steep ramps, make sure that low-hanging components such as the spoiler and exhaust system do not come into contact with these or they could be damaged. This especially applies to vehicles that are equipped with adaptive air suspension* and when the vehicle is at full load.

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Gasoline engine fuel tank	19.8 gal (75.0 L)
Diesel engine fuel tank	19.3 gal (73.0 L)
Windshield washer system	3.7 qt (3.5 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	5.2 qt (4.9 L)

Gasoline engines

A6 2.0, 4 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	252 @ 4900 - 5900
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	273 @ 1600 - 4700
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	121 (1984)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 190, Fuel supply*	

A6 3.0, 6 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	333 @ 5300 - 6500
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	325 @ 2900 - 4500
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	182 (2995)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 190, Fuel supply*	

This vehicle is available with different specifications in some markets (see car documentation).

S6 4.0, 8 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	450 @ 5800 - 6400
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	406 @ 1400 - 5700
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	243.7 (3993)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**Premium unleaded (91 AKI)**, ⇨ *page 190, Fuel supply*	

4G0012721BB

Diesel engines

A6 3.0 TDI, 6 cylinder

Maximum output SAE net	hp @ rpm	239 @ 3500 - 3750
Maximum torque SAE net	lb-ft @ rpm	428 @ 1750 - 2250
Displacement	CID (cm^3)	181 (2967)
Engine oil with filter change[1)]		
Fuel	**ULSD No. 2**, ⇨ *page 191, Diesel fuel*	

[1)] For specific engine oil capacities, please see the most current information for the USA at http://www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance or for Canada at http://www.audi.ca/ca/brand/ en/your_audi/audi_services_and/Care_and_Maintenance/schedule.html or call 800-822-2834.

Consumer information

Warranty coverages

Your Audi is covered by the following warranties:

– *New Vehicle Limited Warranty*
– *Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation*
– *Emissions Control System Warranty*
– *Emissions Performance Warranty*
– *California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)*
– *California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)*

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your **Warranty & Maintenance booklet**.

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

– unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available;
– fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage;
– service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment;
– replacement parts may not be readily available.
– Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries outside North America.

Note

Audi cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability.

Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature

Audi Official Factory Service Manuals and Literature are published as soon as possible after model introduction. Service manuals and literature are available to order from the Audi Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.audi.techliterature.com

Maintenance

General

Your vehicle has been designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. However, a certain amount of regular maintenance is still necessary to assure your vehicle's safety, economy and reliability. For detailed vehicle maintenance consult your Warranty & Maintenance booklet.

Under difficult operating conditions, for example at extremely low outside temperatures, in very dusty regions, etc., some service work should be performed between the intervals specified. This applies particularly to:

– oil changes, and
– cleaning or replacing the air filter.

For the sake of the environment

By regularly maintaining your vehicle, you help make sure that emission standards are maintained, thus minimizing adverse effects on the environment.

Important considerations for you and your vehicle

The increasing use of electronics, sophisticated fuel injection and emission control systems, and the generally increasing technical complexity of today's automobiles, have steadily reduced the ▶

scope of maintenance and repairs which can be carried out by vehicle owners. **Also, safety and environmental** concerns place very strict limits on the nature of repairs and adjustments to engine and transmission parts which an owner can perform.

Maintenance, adjustments and repairs usually require special tools, testing devices and other equipment available to specially trained workshop personnel in order to assure proper performance, reliability and safety of the vehicle and its many systems.

Improper maintenance, adjustments and repairs can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and even void your vehicle warranty. Therefore, proof of servicing in accordance with the maintenance schedule may be a condition for upholding a possible warranty claim made within the warranty period.

Above all, operational safety can be adversely affected, creating unnecessary risks for you and your passengers.

If in doubt about any servicing, have it done by your authorized Audi dealer or any other properly equipped and qualified workshop. We strongly urge you to give your authorized Audi dealer the opportunity to perform all scheduled maintenance and necessary repairs. Your dealer has the facilities, original parts and trained specialists to keep your vehicle running properly.

Performing limited maintenance yourself

The following pages describe a limited number of procedures which can be performed on your vehicle with ordinary tools, should the need arise and trained personnel be unavailable. Before performing any of these procedures, always thoroughly read all of the applicable text and carefully follow the instructions given. Always rigorously observe the **WARNINGS** provided.

Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ ⚠ **and** ⇨ ⚠ *in Working in the engine compartment on page 198*.

WARNING

- Serious personal injury may occur as a result of improperly performed maintenance, adjustments or repairs.
- Always be extremely careful when working on the vehicle. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and general common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Do not attempt any of the maintenance, checks or repairs described on the following pages if you are not fully familiar with these or other procedures with respect to the vehicle, or are uncertain how to proceed.
- Do not do any work without the proper tools and equipment. Have the necessary work done by your authorized Audi dealer or another properly equipped and qualified workshop.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. It is temperature controlled and can switch on suddenly - even when the engine is off. The radiator fan switches on automatically when the coolant reaches a certain temperature and will continue to run until the coolant temperature drops.
- Always switch off the ignition before anyone gets under the vehicle.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if it is necessary to work underneath the vehicle. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not adequate for this purpose and could collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you must work underneath the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, that the wheels are always securely blocked and that the engine cannot be started.
- Always make sure the transmission selector lever (automatic transmission) is in P (Park position) and the park brake is applied. ▶

For the sake of the environment

- Changing the engine settings will adversely affect emission levels. This is detrimental to the environment and increases fuel consumption.
- Always observe environmental regulations when disposing of old engine oil, used brake fluid, dirty engine coolant, spent batteries or worn out tires.
- Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners might be classified as Perchlorate Material -special handling may apply, see www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Accessories and technical changes

Additional accessories and parts replacement

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer before purchasing accessories.

Your vehicle incorporates the latest safety design features ensuring a high standard of active and passive safety.

This safety could be compromised by non-approved changes to the vehicle. For this reason, if parts have to be replaced, please observe the following points when installing additional accessories:

Approved Audi accessories and genuine Audi parts are available from authorized Audi dealers.

These dealers also have the necessary facilities, tools and trained specialists to install the parts and accessories properly.

WARNING

Using the wrong spare parts or using non-approved accessories can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

- Use only accessories expressly approved by Audi and genuine Audi spare parts
- These parts and accessories have been specially designed to be used on your vehicle.
- Do not use license plate brackets in the front area that are different from the one installed at the factory, or add additional license plate brackets.
- Never install accessories such as telephone cradles or beverage holders on airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zones. Doing so will increase the risk of injury if airbags are triggered in an accident!
- Before you check anything in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇨ *page 198*.

Note

- If items other than genuine Audi spare parts, add-on equipment and accessory items are used or if repair work is not performed according to specified methods, this can result in severe damage to your vehicle's engine and body (such as corrosion) and adversely affect your vehicle's warranty.
- If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.
- The manufacturer cannot be held liable for damage which occurs due to failure to comply with these stipulations.

Technical Modifications

Our guidelines must be complied with when technical modifications are made.

Always consult an authorized Audi dealer **before** starting work on any modifications.

This will help ensure that vehicle function, performance and safety are not impaired ⇨ ⚠. ▶

Attempting to work on electronic components and the software used with them can cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected with each other, such malfunctions can also have an adverse affect on other systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and an increased wear of vehicle parts ⇨ ⚠.

Authorized Audi dealers will perform this work in a professional and competent manner or, in special cases, refer you to a professional company that specializes in such modifications.

WARNING

Improper repairs and modifications can change the way vehicle systems work and cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

Note

If emergency repairs must be performed elsewhere, have the vehicle examined by an authorized Audi dealer as soon as possible.

Declaration of Compliance, Telecommunication and Electronic Systems

Radio Frequency Devices and Radiocommunication Equipment User Manual Notice.

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment.

Devices

The following devices each comply with FCC Part 15.19, FCC 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

– Adaptive cruise control*
– Audi side assist*
– Cell phone package*
– Convenience key*
– Electronic immobilizer
– Garage door opener (HomeLink)*
– Remote control key

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

CAUTION:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen Issue 1

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Numbers and Symbols

4-zone deluxe automatic climate control . . . 60
Air vents . . . 64
Key recognition . . . 60
Operation . . . 62
Residual heat . . . 64
Synchronizing . . . 64

A

A/C (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) . . . 63
A/C (deluxe automatic climate control) . . . 61
ABS
refer to Anti-Lock Braking System . . . 120
Accessories . . . 55, 261
Active lane assist . . . 96
Adjusting the vibration warning . . . 98
Cleaning the camera area . . . 232
Indicator light . . . 97
Messages . . . 97
Switching on/off . . . 97
Adaptive air suspension . . . 104
Adaptive cruise control . . . 88
braking guard . . . 93
Cleaning the sensor . . . 232
Messages . . . 95
Request for driver intervention . . . 93
Stop-and-go traffic . . . 91
AdBlue . . . 194
Messages . . . 195
Opening the tank door . . . 195
Refilling . . . 195
Adjusting air distribution (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) . . . 63
Adjusting air distribution (deluxe automatic climate control) . . . 61
Adjusting the temperature (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) . . . 63
Adjusting the temperature (deluxe automatic climate control) . . . 61
advanced key
refer to Convenience key . . . 70
Airbag . . . 147
Airbag system . . . 167
Advanced Airbag-System . . . 151
Advanced Airbag System components . . . 154
Care . . . 162
Children . . . 173
Child restraints . . . 173
Components (front airbags) . . . 154
Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat . . . 148
Disposal . . . 162
Front airbags . . . 151, 152
How do the front airbags work? . . . 157
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 154
How the Advanced Airbag System components work together . . . 156
Important information . . . 147
Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system . . . 165
Knee airbags . . . 163
Monitoring . . . 159
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light . . . 159
Repairs . . . 162
Safety instructions . . . 161
Side airbags . . . 165
Side curtain airbags . . . 168
Warning/Indicator lights . . . 159
When must the system be inspected? . . . 159
Air pressure (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 229
Air suspension . . . 104
Alignment pin (tire changing) . . . 236
All season tires . . . 225
All weather lights . . . 41
All wheel drive . . . 124
Alternator
refer to Alternator (indicator light) . . . 14
Alternator (indicator light) . . . 14
Ambient lighting . . . 44
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system . . . 208
Anti-lock braking system
Indicator light . . . 16
Anti-Lock Braking System . . . 120
Anti-slip regulation
Indicator light . . . 16
Anti-Slip Regulation . . . 120
Armrest . . . 51

4G0012721BB

Ashtray 54
ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 120
Audi braking guard
refer to Braking guard 93
Audi drive select
refer to Drive select 104
Audi Service Repair Manuals and Literature 259
AUTO
4-zone deluxe automatic climate control . . 63
Automatic headlights 41
Deluxe automatic climate control 61
Auto Lock (central locking) 27
Automatic auxiliary heater (climate control system) 64
Automatic belt retractor 142
Automatic climate control 60
Key recognition 60
Operation 61
Automatic key 28
Automatic post-collision braking system . . 120
Automatic transmission 77
Emergency mode 81
Hill descent control 80
Kick-down 81
Selector lever emergency release 82
Selector lever positions 77
Shifting manually 80
Steering wheel with shift paddles 80
tiptronic mode 80
Automatic wipe/wash system 47
Auto Safety Hotline 135
Average consumption 22
Average speed 22
Avoid damaging the vehicle 66

B

Battery
Jump starting 249
also refer to Vehicle battery 206
Before driving 128
Belt tensioner
Drive select 104
Belt tensioners 145
Blended gasoline 190
Blower (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Blower (deluxe automatic climate control) . . 61
Booster seats 181
Brakes
Brake fluid 206
Electromechanical parking brake 75
Indicator light 19
Braking 122
Brake assist 120
Brake booster 122
Ceramic brake rotors 122
Emergency braking function 75
Indicator light 13
New brake pads 122
Worn brake pads 17
Braking guard 93
Messages 95
Settings 95
Break-in period
Tires 66
Breaking in
New brake pads 122
New engine 66
New tires 217
Bulbs 248

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 199
Battery specific 207
Capacities
AdBlue 194
Engine oil 201
Fuel tank 257
Washer fluid reservoir 257
Care 231
Cargo area 134
Catalytic converter 197
Center armrest 51
Central locking 27
Central locking switch 31
Convenience key 30
Emergency locking 32
Luggage compartment lid 33
Panorama glass roof 37
Power windows 37
Remote control key 30

Setting 32
Sunroof 37
Ceramic brake rotors
New brake pads 122
Certification 262
Changing engine oil 204
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 148
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 189
Child restraint system anchors 185
Child safety 171
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 175
Important things to know when driving with children 171
Tether anchors 188
Tether straps 188
Child safety lock
Power windows 36
Rear doors 36
Child safety seats
Booster seats 181
Convertible child seats 179
Convertible locking retractor 184
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 175
Infant seats 177
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 187
LATCH system 187
Lower anchorages 186
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 187
Safety instructions 175
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 177
Child seats 177
Securing 182
Cigarette lighter 54
Cleaning 231
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 233
Cleaning Alcantara 234
Cleaning artificial leather 234
Cleaning carbon parts 233, 234
Cleaning controls 233
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 233
Cleaning displays 233
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 232
Cleaning plastic parts 233
Cleaning rims 232
Cleaning textiles 234
Climate control system 60
Automatic auxiliary heater 64
Automatic recirculation 64
Basic settings 64
Drive select 104
Closing
Hood 200
Sunroof 38
Windows 37
Closing/opening
By remote control 30
With the central locking switch 31
With the convenience key 30
Closing aid (doors) 27
Closing and opening
With the door lock 32
Clutch (manual transmission)
Indicator light 16
Cockpit (overview) 6
Color code 255
Coming home 43
Compartments 55
Compliance 262
Consumer information 259
Consumer Information 135
Consumption (fuel) 22
Contacting NHTSA 135
Convenience key
Starting the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 70
Stopping the engine (START ENGINE STOP button) 71
Switching the ignition on 70
Unlocking/locking 30
Convenience opening 37
Convertible child safety seats 179
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 184
Deactivating 185
Using to secure a child safety seat 184
Cooling down 66

4G0012721BB

Cooling mode (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Cooling mode (deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Cooling system
Adding coolant 205
Coolant 204
Coolant level checking 205
Coolant temperature indicator 9
Indicator light 14
Cornering light 104
Crossing water 66
Cruise control system
Changing speed 87
Preselecting speed 87
Switching off 87
switching on 86
Cup holders 55
Current consumption 22
Cylinder management
refer to Cylinder on demand system 22
Cylinder on demand system 22

D

Data recorder 126
Date display 24
Daytime running lights 41
Declaration of compliance
Adaptive cruise control 262
Audi side assist 262
Cell phone package 262
Convenience key 262
Electronic immobilizer 262
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 262
Remote control key 262
DEF
refer to AdBlue 194
Defective light bulb warning
Indicator light 19
Defrosting (windows)
4-zone deluxe automatic climate control . . 63
Deluxe automatic climate control 61
DEF (instrument cluster) 24
Deluxe automatic climate control
Air vents 62
Determining correct load limit 224
Diesel
Indicator light 18
Prewarming 70
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)
refer to AdBlue 194
Diesel fuel 191
Diesel particulate filter 198
Dimensions 256
Dimming the rearview mirror 45
Distance driven 22
Door/rear lid warning 21
Doors
Child safety lock 36
Closing aid 27
Emergency locking 32
Driver information system 21
CD/radio display 21
Door/rear lid warning 21
Efficiency program 23
Exterior temperature display 21
On-board computer 22
Service interval display 208
Driver seating position 129
Drive select 104
Driving economically 67
Driving safely 128
Driving through water 66
Driving time 22
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 60
Dynamic steering 104
Indicator light 123

E

Easy seat entry 70
Economy tips (efficiency program) 23
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 120
Efficiency program 23
Electromechanical parking brake 75
Electromechanical steering 123
Indicator light 123
Electronic differential lock
Indicator light 16
Electronic Differential Lock 120
Electronic immobilizer 28

Electronic speed limiter 26
Electronic stabilization control
Indicator light 16
Electronic Stabilization Control 120
Sport mode 121
Emergency assistance 236
Emergency braking function 75
Emergency flashers 43
Emergency locking the front passenger door 32
Emergency operation
Doors 32
Luggage compartment lid 36
Selector lever 82
Sunroof 38
Emergency release
Fuel filler door 194
Emergency starting 249
Energy management 124
Indicator light 14
Engine
Coolant 204
Prewarming 70
Start-Stop system 72
Starting 70
Starting with jumper cables 249
Stopping 71
Warming up/cooling down 66
Engine compartment
Opening/closing the hood 200
Overview 201
Safety precautions 198
Engine control (indicator light) 17
Engine oil 201
Adding 203
Changing 204
Checking the engine oil level 203
Fuel consumption 203
Indicator light 15
Oil consumption 202
Specification and viscosity 201
Engine sound 104
Engine speed limitation (indicator light) . . . 18
Engine Start/Stop mode
refer to Start/Stop system 74
Engine warm-up request
Indicator light 18
Environment
Catalytic converter 197
Diesel particulate filter 198
Proper disposal of drained engine oil 204
Unleaded fuel 190
EPC (engine control) 17
ESC
Automatic post-collision braking system . 120
also refer to Electronic stabilization control 120
ESP
refer to Electronic stabilization control . . 120
Event Data Recorder (EDR) 126
Exterior lighting 41
Exterior mirrors
Adjusting 45
Dimming 45
Heating 45
Exterior temperature display 21

F

Fastening
Booster seats 181
Convertible child safety seats 179
Infant seats 177
Floor mats 133
Folding the rear seats 57
Foot pedals 133
For the sake of the environment
Environmentally-friendly driving 67
Fueling 192
Leaks 199
Roof rack 57
Warming up the engine 70
Freeze protection
Coolant additive 204
Front airbags
Description 151
How they work 157
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . 140
Front seats
Adjusting 130
Child restraints in the front seat 148
also refer to Seats 50

4G0012721BB

Fuel
Additives 190
Blended gasoline 190
Current consumption 22
Fuel filler neck 192
Fuel gauge 9, 10
Fuel tank capacity 257
Gasoline 190
Gasoline additives 191
Indicator light 18
Octane rating 190
Recommendation 190
Saving fuel 67, 104
Fueling
Fuel gauge 10
Fuel tank capacity 257
Opening the fuel filler door 192
Fuses
Assignment 245
Replacing 244

G

Garage door opener (HomeLink) 39
Garment hook 56
Gas discharge lamps 248
Glasses holder 56
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 212
Glove compartment 56
cooled 56
Valet Parking function 39
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 256

H

Head-up display 24
Headlight range control
Indicator light 19
Headlight range control system 41
Headlights 42
Cleaning 232
Headlight range control system 41
Washer system 47
Head restraints 131
Adjusting 51, 52, 131
Removing and installing 52
Heated
Exterior mirrors 45
Rear window (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 64
Rear window (deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Seats (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Seats (deluxe automatic climate control) . . 62
Washer nozzles 47
Heating 60
Heavy clothing and safety belts 141
High beams
Assistant 42
High voltage warning label 255
Hill descent control 80
Hill hold assist 76
also refer to Hill hold assist 76
Hold assist (hill) 76
HomeLink (garage door opener) 39
Hooks 59
Horn 6
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 185
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 154
How safety belt pretensioners work 145

I

Ignition
Indicator light 15
Switching on/off 70
Imbalance (wheels) 218
Immobilizer 24, 28
Important things to do before driving 128
Improperly worn safety belts 145
Indicator lights 10
Infant seats 177
Inflation pressure (tires) 220
Inspection interval 208
Installing child safety seats
Safety belts 182
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 188
Instrument cluster 9
Indicator lights 10
Messages 10

Instruments 9
Adjusting illumination 44
Interior lighting
Ambient lighting 44
Front and rear 44
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 47

J

Jump-starting 249
Jumper cables 250

K

Key 28
Indicator light 71
Key not recognized 72
Key replacement 28
Mechanical key 28, 29
Replacing the battery 29
Unlocking/locking 30
Unlocking and locking 32
Key recognition (climate control system) . . . 60
Kick-down (automatic transmission) 81
Knee airbags 163
Description 163
How they work 164
Important safety instructions 165

L

Lane assist
refer to Active lane assist 96
LATCH 185
Description 186
Installing a child restraint 187
Location 186
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 187
Launch control program 81
Leather care/cleaning 234
Leaving home 43
Lifting jack 239
Light
Ambient lighting 44
Coming/Leaving home 43
Daytime running lights 41
Headlight flasher 42
Headlights 42
High beam assistant 42
Low beams 41
Parking lights 41
Rear fog lights 41
Light/rain sensor
Headlights 41
Indicator light 19
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 47
Lighting
Exterior 41
Interior 44
Lights
Headlight range control system 41
Interior/reading lights 44
Locking/unlocking
By remote control 30
With the central locking switch 31
With the convenience key 30
Locking and unlocking
On the door lock 32
Low beam
Indicator light 19
Low beams 41
Lower universal anchorages (Canada) 185
Luggage compartment 57
12 Volt socket 55
Increasing the size 57
Luggage compartment net 58
Pass-through 59
Ski bag 59
Storing cargo correctly 134
Stowing luggage 134
Tie-downs 58
Valet Parking function 39
Luggage compartment lid 36
Closing button 34
Emergency release 36
movement-activated opening 35
Opening/closing 33, 34
Opening from the inside in an emergency . 36
also refer to Luggage compartment lid . . . 33
Luggage rack 57
Lumbar support 50

M

Maintenance 259

4G0012721BB

Maintenance intervals 208
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 25
Massage function 50
Mechanical key 28, 29
Memory function 52
Mirror
  Dimming 45
  Vanity mirror 46
Mirrors
  Exterior mirrors 45
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 159
Multifunction steering wheel 22

N

Natural leather care/cleaning 234
NHTSA
  Contacting 135
Night vision assist 101
  Cleaning the camera 232
Nitrogen oxide (NOx) catalytic converter
  refer to AdBlue 194
Number of seats 139

O

Occupant seating positions 129
Octane rating 190
Odometer 24
OFF (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
OFF (deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Oil
  Indicator light 18
  also refer to Engine oil 201
Oil change interval 208
On-board computer 22
On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD)
  Data Link Connector (DLC) 25
  Electronic speed limiter 26
  Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 25
Opening 27
  Fuel filler door 192
  Hood 200
  Luggage compartment lid 34
  Sunroof 38
  Windows 37
Opening/closing
  With the central locking switch 31
  With the convenience key 30
Opening and closing
  On the door lock cylinder 32
Other consumers (efficiency program) 23
Overview (Cockpit) 6

P

Paint damage 233
Paint number 255
Parking aid
  Cleaning sensors/camera 232
Parking brake
  refer to Electromechanical parking brake . 75
Parking lights 41
Parking system
  Adjusting the display/warning tone 118
  Cleaning the rearview camera 110
  Malfunction 118
  Parking system plus 109
  Peripheral cameras 113
  Peripheral display 109
  Trailer hitch 118
  also refer to Parking systems 109, 110
Parking systems 108
  Rearview camera 110
Parking (automatic transmission) 79
Parking (Valet Parking function) 39
Parts replacement 261
Pass-through 59
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 159
Passenger protection 137
Pedals 133
Pedestrian detection 101
Peripheral display 109
Physical principles of a frontal collision . . . 140
Polishing 233
Pollen filter
  refer to Pollutant filter 60
Pollutant filter 60
Power
  Seat adjustment 50
  Windows 37

Power windows
Child safety lock 36
Convenience opening 37
Malfunction 38
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 144
Pre sense 137
Pretensioners
Pre sense 137
Preventative passenger protection 137
Prewarming 70
Proper occupant seating positions 129
Proper safety belt position 143
Proper seating position
Front passenger 130
Occupants 129
Rear passengers 131
Protecting 233

Q

quattro (all wheel drive) 124
Selective wheel torque control 120
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . 140

R

Rail carrier 254
Rain/light sensor
Headlights 41
Indicator light 19
Intermittent (windshield wipers) 47
Raising the vehicle 253
Range (fuel level) 22
Reading lights 44
Rear fog lights 41
Rear light
Indicator light 19
Rearview camera
refer to Parking systems 109, 110
Rearview mirror dimming 45
Rear window defogger (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 64
Rear window defogger (deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Rear window shade 46, 47
Recirculation mode (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Recirculation mode (deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Recuperation 22
Refueling 192
Fuel filler door emergency release 194
Remote control
refer to Remote control key 28
Remote control key 28
LED 29
Personalizing 28
Replacing the battery 29
Unlocking/locking 30
Remote control operation
Garage door opener (HomeLink) 39
Removing the side trim panel in the luggage compartment 194
Repair manuals 259
Repairs
Airbag system 162
Replacement key 28
Replacing
Light bulbs 248
Replacing windshield wiper blades 48
Reporting Safety Defects 135, 136
Reset button (trip odometer) 24
Resetting the trip odometer 24
Residual heat (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 64
Retractor 142
Reverse gear (automatic transmission) 77
Rims 225
Road carrier 254
Roof load 57
Roof rack 57

S

Safe driving habits 128
Safety 128
Airbag system 147
Belts 139
Cargo 134
Correct seating position 129
Pedal area 133

4G0012721BB

Safety belt position 143
Safety belt height adjustment 144
Safety belts worn by pregnant women . . . 144
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 146
Safety belts 139, 142
Cleaning 233
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 140
Fastening 142
Height adjustment 144
Improperly worn 145
Indicator light (front) 14
Not worn 140
Safety belt position 143
Safety instructions 141
Securing child safety seats 182
Special considerations for pregnant women 144
Unfastening 144
Warning/indicator light 139
Worn properly 141
Safety belt warning light 139
Safety compliance sticker 255
Safety equipment 128
Safety features for occupant restraint and protection 128
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags 170
for using child safety seats 175
for using safety belts 141
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 161
Saving fuel
Cylinder on demand system 22
Efficiency program 23
Recuperation 22
Screwdriver 236
Seat adjustment
Head restraints 131
Seat heating (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Seat heating (deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Seating position
Driver 129
Front passenger 130
How to adjust the front seats 130
Incorrect seat position 132
Occupants 129
Rear passengers 131
Seats
Adjusting 50
Cleaning 234
Convenience side view 53
Correct seating position 129
Folding 57
Massage function 50
Seat symmetry 53
Seats (number) 139
Seat ventilation (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Selective catalytic reduction
refer to AdBlue 194
Selective wheel torque control 120
Selector lever (automatic transmission)
Emergency release 82
Positions 77
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 146
Service interval display 208
Shade 46, 47
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) 80
Ship carrier 254
Side airbags
Description 165
How they work 167
Side assist 98
Adjusting the brightness 101
Cleaning the sensors 232
Sensor range 99
Switching on and off 100
also refer to Side assist 98
Side curtain airbags 168
Description 168
How they work 169
Safety instructions 170
Ski bag 59
Securing 59
Snow chains 226
Socket 55
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 189
Space-saving spare tire 242
Spare tire 242

Speed limiter 26
Speed warning system 86
Sport differential 104
Indicator light 19
Star button 22
Start-Stop system 72
Start/Stop system
Engine does not switch off 73
Engine starts automatically 73
Indicator lights 73
Messages 74
Starting/stopping the engine 73
Switching off/on 74
START ENGINE STOP button 70
Starting (engine) 70, 73
Steering
Electromechanical steering 123, 0
Indicator light 15, 123
Locking 71
also refer to Electromechanical steering . 123
Steering wheel
Buttons 22
Easy seat entry 70
Manual adjustment 68
Power adjustment 69
Shift paddles (automatic transmission) . . . 80
Steering wheel heating 65
Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 224
Stopping (engine) 71, 73
Storage compartments 55
Storage hooks 59
S tronic (automatic transmission) 77
Launch control program 81
Sunroof 38
Convenience opening 37
Emergency closing 38
Sunshade 46, 47
Sun visors 46
Symbols
refer to Indicator lights 10

T

Tachometer 9, 10, 21
Tail lights
Cleaning 232
TDI clean diesel
refer to AdBlue 194
Technical data 255
Technical modifications 261
Temperature display
Coolant 9
Exterior temperature 21
Tether anchors 188
Tether strap 188
Tie-downs 58, 135
Time 24
tiptronic mode (automatic transmission) . . . 80
tiptronic (automatic transmission) 77
Tire pressure (tire pressure monitoring system) 229
Tires 210
All wheel drive 124
Low aspect ratio tires 226
Replacing 237
Service life 218
Tire pressure 220
Tire pressure monitoring system . . . 228, 229
Tire pressure table 221
Treadwear indicators 218
Unidirectional 212
Uniform tire quality grading 227
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 212
Tires and vehicle load limits 223
Tool kit 236
Torn or frayed safety belts 141
Towing
Tow trucks 251
Towing loop 251, 252
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system) . . . 229
Trailer towing 83
Information 85
Operating instructions 83
Parking system 118
Technical requirements 83, 84
Transmission malfunction (indicator light) . . 81
Transport Canada 136
Turn signals 42

U

ULSD No. 2 (Diesel fuel) 191

4G0012721BB

Unfastening safety belts 144
Uniform tire quality grading 227
Unlocking/locking
By remote control 30
With the central locking switch 31
With the convenience key 30
Unlocking and locking
On the door lock cylinder 32

V

Valet Parking function 39
Vanity mirror 46
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 231
Dimensions 256
Identification number 255
Out of service 235
Specifications 255
Transporting 254
Vehicle identification label 255
Vehicle battery 206
Charge level 124
Charging 14, 207
Energy management 124
Indicator light 14
Winter operation 207
Vehicle control modules 126
Vehicle jack 236, 239
Vehicle tool kit 236
Ventilation 60
VIN 255

W

Warming up 66
Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 159
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 159
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 10
Warning triangle 236
Warranty coverages 259
Washer fluid level (indicator light) 19
Washing matte finish paint 231
Weights 256
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 143
What happens to unbelted occupants? 140
What impairs driving safety? 129
Wheel bolts 225
Wheels 210
Cleaning 232
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . 212
Replacing 237
Tire pressure monitoring system 229
Tires and vehicle load limits 223
Wheel wrench 236
When must a safety belt be replaced? 141
When must the airbag system be inspected? 159
Where are lower anchorages located? 186
Wild animal detection 101
Window regulators 37
Windows
Cleaning/removing ice 233
Defrosting (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Defrosting (deluxe automatic climate control) 61
Windshield
cleaning 47
Defrosting (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Defrosting (deluxe automatic climate control) 61
also refer to Windshield 47
Windshield washer system 47, 208
Reservoir capacity 257
Windshield wipers
Cleaning wiper blades 48
Folding up 48
Indicator light 19
Replacing windshield wiper blades 48
Switching on and off 47
Winter driving
Snow chains 226
Tires 225
Winter operation
Cooling system 204
Defrosting windows (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Defrosting windows (deluxe automatic climate control) 61

Seat heating (4-zone deluxe automatic climate control) 63
Seat heating (deluxe automatic climate control) 62
Steering wheel heating 65
Vehicle battery 207
Windshield washer system 208
Winter tires 225
Winter use
Car washes 231
Removing ice from windows 233

X

Xenon-Lights 248

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This Owner's Manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most up-to-date information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 05.2016
4G0012721BB

4G0012721BB

www.audi.com